



Sprint Printable User Guide

A downloadable, printable guide to your phone's features.

htc one[®] M9

Table of Contents

Important Information	1
Radio Frequency Exposure Operating Instructions	1
Important Note on Recoverable Data	1
Introduction	2
Get Started	3
Phone Layout	3
SIM Card	5
Handling SIM Card	5
Insert SIM Card	6
SD Card	7
Insert SD Card	7
Unmount the SD Card	8
Remove SD Card	8
Format SD Card	9
Charge the Battery	9
Turn Your Phone On and Off	10
Touchscreen Navigation	12
Motion Gestures	17
Activate Your Phone	19
Complete the Setup Screens	20
Transfer Content to Your New Phone	22
Transfer Content from an Android Phone	22
Transfer Content from an iPhone	23
Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth	24
Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer	25
Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone	25
Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone	26
Basic Operations	27
Basics	27
Home Screen and Applications (Apps) List	27
Onscreen Navigation Keys	28
Get to Know Your Settings	29
Using Quick Settings	29

Capture Screenshots	30
Applications	31
Apps List	31
Open an App	34
Phone Number	37
Silent Mode	38
Airplane Mode	38
Enter Text	39
HTC Sense Keyboard	39
Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard	39
Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard	41
Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard	42
Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard	43
Calibrate the Keyboard	43
Edit Text	44
Google Account	45
Create a Google Account	45
Sign In to Your Google Account	46
Google Play Store	46
Find and Install an App	47
Request a Refund for a Paid App	48
Update an App	48
Uninstall an App	48
Get Help with Google Play	49
Lock and Unlock Your Screen	49
Update Your Phone	50
Update Your Phone Software	50
Update Your Profile	52
Update Your PRL	52
Your Phone Interface	53
Home Screen Basics	53
Home Screen Layout	53
Extended Home Screens - Widget Panels	54
Status Bar	54
Notifications Panel	56
Manage App Notifications	57
Front Indicator Light (LED)	57

Change LED Notification Settings	58
HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen	58
Customize the Home Screen	62
Change the Wallpaper	62
Customize the Launch Bar	63
Change Your Main Home Screen	63
Organize Your Widget Panels	64
Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts	64
HTC Sense Home Widget	66
Customize the Lock Screen	69
Lock Screen Notifications	70
Themes	71
Download Themes	71
Bookmark Themes	72
Create Themes	72
Mix and Match Themes	73
Find Your Themes	74
Share Themes	74
Delete a Theme	74
Motion Launch	74
Turn Motion Launch On or Off	75
Wake Up to the Lock Screen	76
Wake Up and Unlock	76
Wake to the Home Widget Panel	77
Wake to HTC BlinkFeed	77
Auto Launch the Camera with Motion Launch Snap	78
Make a Call with Quick Call	79
Motion Launch Troubleshooting	80
Phone App	81
HD™ Voice	81
Place and Answer Calls	81
Call Using the Phone Dialer	82
Set Up Speed Dial	85
Return a Missed Call	85
Answer Phone Calls	86
In-Call Screen Layout and Operations	86
Place Calls from History/People	88

Call History	88
Open Call History	89
Save a Number From Call History	89
Prepend a Number From Call History	89
Block a Caller	90
Erase Call History	90
Video Chat	90
Face Tracking	90
Share Your Phone Screen	91
Optional Services	92
Voicemail (Traditional)	92
Visual Voicemail	93
Visual Voicemail Options	95
Conference Calling	96
Caller ID Blocking	97
Call Waiting	97
Call Forwarding	97
Internet Calls	98
Add an Internet Calling Account	98
Make an Internet Call	98
Wi-Fi Calling	99
Set Up and Enable Wi-Fi Calling	99
Make a Call Using Wi-Fi Calling	100
Turn Off Wi-Fi Calling	100
Call Settings	100
Change Ringtone Settings	100
Contacts	101
Your People List	101
Find People	103
Set Up Your Profile	103
Add Entries to the People App	104
Get in Touch with a Contact	105
Manage People Entries	105
Import or Copy Contacts	106
Merge Entries in People	107
Send Contact Information	108
Contact Groups	109

Back Up and Restore Your Contacts	110
Private Contacts	111
Messaging and Internet	112
Text and Multimedia Messaging	112
Send a Text Message (SMS)	112
Send a Multimedia Message (MMS)	113
Send a Group Message	114
Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message	115
Read and Reply to a Message	115
Help Protect Your Messages	117
Block Unwanted Messages	118
Delete Messages and Conversations	118
Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages	118
Text and Multimedia Message Options	120
Create and Send Gmail	122
Create and Send a Gmail Message	122
Check Received Gmail Messages	123
Manage Gmail Messages	124
Add a Gmail Account	124
Get Help with Gmail	125
Email	125
Add an Email Account	125
Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account	126
Check Your Mail Inbox	126
Organize Your Inbox	127
Send an Email Message	128
Read and Reply to an Email Message	128
Save an Image in an Email Message	129
Manage Email Messages	129
Search Email Messages	130
Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email	130
Use Smart Sync	132
Delete an Email Account	132
Change the Email Account Settings	132
Data Services General Information (Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks)	134
Sprint Spark LTE	134
Your User Name	135

Data Connection Status and Indicators	135
Turn the Data Connection On or Off	136
Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off	136
Manage Your Data Usage	136
Chrome Browser	138
Use Browser Tabs	138
Add Bookmarks	139
Browsing History	139
Private Browsing	140
Set Browser Options	140
Chrome Support	140
Search for Information	140
Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone	140
Search the Web with Your Voice	141
Set Search Options	141
Get Instant Information with Google Now	141
Camera and Video	145
Take Pictures and Record Videos	145
Get Started with the Camera	145
Take a Picture	147
Capture Better Photos	148
Record a Video	149
Take a Photo While Recording a Video - VideoPic®	149
Take Continuous Camera Shots	150
Change the Focus in Bokeh Mode	150
Selfies and People Shots	151
Split Capture	154
Panoramic Shots	154
Other Camera Features	156
Camera Settings	157
View Pictures and Videos Using Gallery	158
View Pictures and Videos	158
Add Photos or Videos to an Album	161
Copy or Move Photos or Videos Between Albums	162
Tag Photos and Videos	162
Search for Photos and Videos	163
Find Matching Photos	163

View Pan 360 Photos	164
Change the Video Playback Speed	164
Trim Videos	165
Save a Photo From a Video	166
View a Zoe in Gallery	166
One Gallery	166
Photo Editor	167
Basic Photo Editing	167
Edit Continuous Shots	170
Creative Effects	172
Useful Features	179
NASCAR Mobile	179
Navigation	179
HTC Car	180
Google Maps	181
Scout	184
Hangouts	185
Calculator	186
Calendar	186
Schedule or Edit an Event	187
View Calendar Events	188
Choose Which Calendar to Show	188
Share an Event (vCalendar)	189
Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation	189
Dismiss or Snooze Reminders	190
Clock	190
Check the Time	190
Set the Date and Time Manually	190
Set an Alarm	190
Additional Clock Features	191
Check the Weather	192
Twitter	192
Install the Twitter App on Your Phone	192
Tweet on Twitter	193
Facebook	193
Install the Facebook App on Your Phone	193
Use Facebook	193

YouTube	194
Music Apps and Sound Enhancements	195
Listen to Music	195
Google Play Music App	200
Sprint Music Plus	201
HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio	203
Toggle Modes in HTC BoomSound	203
Use HTC BoomSound with Headphones	203
Google Wallet	203
Kid Mode	204
Create a Child Profile	204
Explore Kid Mode	204
Parent Dashboard	205
Close Kid Mode	206
Scribble	206
Compose a Note	207
Create a Note for a Photo Blog	208
Group Notes Into a Notebook	209
Publish and Share a Note	209
Online Storage and File Management	209
Google Drive	210
HTC Sync Manager	211
File Manager	213
Voice Recorder	215
HTC Dot View	216
Change the HTC Dot View Wallpaper	216
Select Which Notifications to Display	217
HTC Help	217
Connectivity	218
Connections Optimizer	218
Transfer Files Between Your Phone and a Computer	219
Wi-Fi	220
Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network	220
Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks	220
Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS	221
Disconnect from a Wireless Network	221
Wi-Fi Direct	221

Virtual Private Networks (VPN)	222
Add a VPN Connection	222
Connect to a VPN	222
Disconnect From a VPN	223
Mobile Hotspot	223
Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering	224
Bluetooth	224
Bluetooth Information	224
Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit	225
Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit	225
Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device	226
Send Information Using Bluetooth	226
Where Sent Information is Saved	227
Receive Files Using Bluetooth	227
Share Content with NFC	228
Turn NFC On	229
Beam Content	229
HTC Connect	230
Share Media Using HTC Connect	230
Stream Music to Speakers Powered by Qualcomm AllPlay Media Platform	232
Stream Music to Blackfire Compliant Speakers	233
Global Services	235
Set the Communications Method for Global Use	235
Activate Sprint Worldwide Service on Your Account	235
Your Phone's SIM Card for International GSM Roaming	235
Enable Global Roaming Mode	236
Make and Receive Worldwide Calls	236
Sprint International Voicemail Service	237
Set Up Your Voicemail Access Number for International Use	237
Access Your Voicemail Internationally	238
International Data Roaming	238
Access Email and Data Services Internationally	239
Contact Sprint for Assistance with International Service	239
Settings	241
Basic Settings	241
Airplane Mode	242
Wi-Fi	242

Wi-Fi Calling Settings	242
Bluetooth Settings	242
Mobile Data Settings	242
HTC Connect	243
More Wireless & Network Settings	243
Personalize Settings	243
Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings	243
Ringtone	244
Notification Sound	244
Alarm	244
Font	244
Keyboard and Dialer Color	245
Accounts & Sync	245
Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More	245
Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account	245
Add Email Accounts	245
Add One or More Google Accounts	246
Manage Your Online Accounts	246
Location Settings	247
Location Setting	247
Google Location Reporting	248
HTC Location Services	248
Security Settings	248
Screen Lock Settings	248
Lock Screen and Password Settings	250
Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs	250
Work with Certificates	251
Accessibility Settings	251
Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack	252
Backup and Reset	254
Backup	254
Reset Your Phone	257
Get Content From Another Phone	258
Display & Gestures Settings	258
Glove Mode	258
Auto-rotate Screen	258
Font Size	258

Brightness	259
Screen Timeout (Sleep)	259
Daydream	259
Media Gesture	260
Motion Launch Gestures	260
Calibrate the Screen	260
HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio	260
Sound & Notification Settings	261
Sound Profile and Vibrate	261
Volumes	261
Notification and Alarm Sound	261
Use Interruptions	262
Incoming Calls - Ringtone	262
Incoming Calls - Other Options	262
System Sound Settings	263
Notification - Flash Notifications	263
Notification - App Light Notifications	263
Notification - Lock Screen Notifications	263
Call Settings	264
Call Features	264
Voicemail Settings	264
Hearing Aids	264
CDMA Call Settings	265
Internet Call Settings	266
Apps Settings	266
Uninstall Third-party Apps	266
Clear Application Cache and Data	266
Storage Settings	267
Types of Storage	267
Copy Files To or From Your Phone	267
Make More Storage Space	268
Encrypt Data on Your Phone	268
Power Settings	269
Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode	269
Use Extreme Power Saving Mode	270
Check Battery Usage	270
Check Battery History	270

Display the Battery Percentage	270
Battery Saving Tips	271
Language & Keyboard Settings	272
Change the Phone Language	272
Spell Checker	273
Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input	273
Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing	274
Speech Settings	274
Date & Time Settings	274
Printing	275
Activate This Device	275
System Updates	275
About Your Phone	276
Copyright Information	276
For Assistance	279
Troubleshooting	279
Specifications	280
Sprint Account Information and Help	281
Sprint Account Passwords	281
Manage Your Account	281
Sprint Support Services	282
Index	283

Important Information

The following topics provide important information that should be read prior to using your HTC One M9.

Radio Frequency Exposure Operating Instructions

This device was tested for compliance with the applicable FCC and Industry Canada specific absorption rate (SAR) limits for radio frequency (RF) exposure during typical body-worn operations. To ensure that RF exposure levels remain at or below the tested levels, use a belt-clip, holster, or similar accessory that maintains a minimum separation distance of 1.0 cm between your body and the device, with either the front or back of the device facing towards your body. Such accessories should not contain any metallic components. Body-worn accessories that do not meet these specifications may not ensure compliance with applicable SAR limits and their use should be avoided.

Important Note on Recoverable Data

Files and other data that have been deleted, cleared, removed, or erased from your device may still be recoverable by third-party data recovery software. Even a factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

Introduction

The following topics describe the basics of using this guide and your new phone.

About the User Guide


Thank you for purchasing your new HTC Phone. The following topics explain how best to use this guide to get the most out of your phone.

Before Using Your Phone

Read [Important Information](#) thoroughly for proper usage.

Accessible services may be limited by subscription contract conditions.

Descriptions in the User Guide

Note that most descriptions in this guide are based on your phone's setup at the time of purchase. Unless otherwise noted, instructions begin from the phone's home screen, which is displayed by tapping . Some operation descriptions may be simplified.

Screenshots and Key Labels

Screenshots in the user guide may appear differently on your phone. Key labels in the user guide are simplified for description purposes and differ from your phone's display.

Other Notations

In the user guide, the phone may be referred to either as "phone," "device," or "handset." A microSD™ or microSDHC™ card is referred to as an "SD Card" or a "memory card."

Get Started

The following topics give you all the information you need to set up your phone and wireless service the first time.

Phone Layout

The following illustration outlines your phone's primary external features and buttons.



Part	Description
IR Sensor	Lets you control your TV , cable box, or home entertainment system.

Part	Description
Proximity Sensor	<p>Detects how close an object is to the surface of the screen. This is typically used to detect when your face is pressed up against the screen, such as during a phone call.</p> <p>While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and turns off the screen to prevent accidental key taps.</p>
Front Camera	Takes pictures and records videos while facing the screen, and allows you to video conference.
Volume Buttons	Allows you to adjust the ringtone or media volume or adjust the voice volume during a call.
Power/Lock Button	Press quickly to turn off and lock the phone screen. Press and hold to turn the phone on or off or switch to Kid Mode or airplane mode.
microSD Card Tray with Eject Hole	Allows installation of a microSD card for additional storage. The microSD card is sold separately. See SD Card .
3.5 mm Headset Jack	Allows you to plug in either a stereo headset or an optional headset for convenient, hands-free conversations.
Charger/Accessory Jack	Allows you to connect the phone charger or the USB cable (included).
Speaker	Lets you hear the caller and automated prompts.
Touchscreen	Displays all the information needed to operate your phone, such as the call status, the Contacts list, and the date and time. Also provides one-tap access to all of your features and applications.
Nano SIM Card Tray with Eject Hole	Holds the preinstalled Sprint 4G LTE™ nano SIM card. See SIM Card .
LED	Displays a phone notification, charging status, or alert.
Speaker	Lets you hear the different ringtones and sounds. This speaker also lets you hear the caller's voice and automated prompts.

CAUTION! Inserting an accessory into the incorrect jack may damage the phone.



Part	Description
Dual Flash	Helps illuminate subjects in low-light environments when the camera is focusing and capturing a picture or video.
Camera	Lets you take pictures and videos.

SIM Card

The SIM card is an IC card containing the phone number and other customer information.

Handling SIM Card

Keep the following in mind when handling a SIM card.

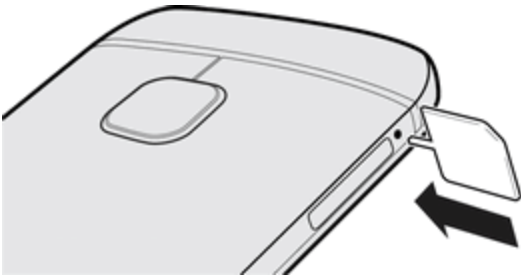
- Customer is responsible for any damage caused by inserting SIM Card in another-brand IC card reader, etc. The company is not responsible in such case.
- Always keep the IC chip clean.
- Wipe clean with a dry, soft cloth.
- Avoid applying labels. May damage SIM Card.
- See instructions included with SIM Card for handling.

- SIM Card is the property of the company.
- SIM is replaceable (at cost) in case of loss/damage.
- Return SIM Card to the company when cancelling subscription.
- Returned SIM Cards are recycled for environmental purposes.
- Note that SIM Card specifications and performance may change without notice.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of information that is stored on SIM Card. The company is not responsible for damages from stored information that is lost.
- Always follow emergency procedures to suspend service if your SIM Card or phone (SIM Card inserted) is lost/stolen. For details, contact Customer Service.
- Always power off phone before inserting/removing SIM Card.

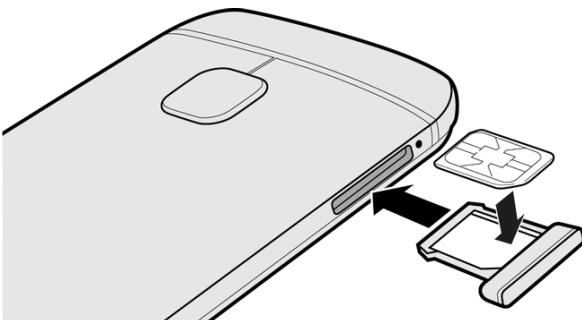
Insert SIM Card

Follow these instructions to insert a SIM card. Remember to power off your phone before inserting a SIM card.

1. Hold the phone face down.
2. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the nano SIM card tray slot until the tray ejects.



3. Pull the tray out and place the nano SIM card into the tray. Make sure that the nano SIM card's gold contacts are facing up.



4. Insert the tray back into the slot.
5. Turn on the phone.

SD Card

Your phone supports the use of an optional SD card (not included) to expand its storage capacity. It supports cards up to 128GB. Some cards may not operate properly with your phone.

SD Card Cautions

Data: Information stored on SD Card can become lost or changed accidentally or as a result of damage. It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of important data. The company is not responsible for damages from data that is lost or changed.

Reading/Writing Data: Never power off while reading or writing data.

Battery Level: A low battery charge may prevent reading/writing to SD Card.

Handling SD Card: Use/store SD Cards away from the reach of infants. May cause choking if swallowed.

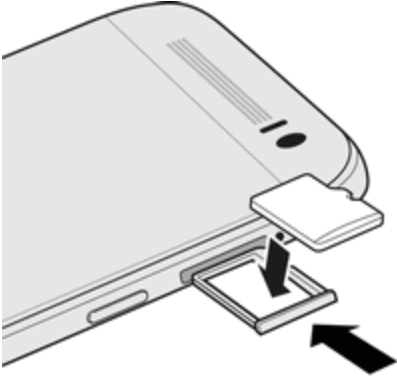
Insert SD Card

Follow these steps to insert an optional SD card (not included). Make sure to power your phone off before inserting or removing an SD card.

1. Turn off the phone.
2. Hold the phone face up.
3. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the microSD card tray slot until the tray ejects.



4. Pull the microSD card tray out, and place the microSD card into the tray.



5. Insert the microSD card tray back into the slot.
6. Turn on the phone.

Unmount the SD Card

Always unmount the SD card before removing it from your phone.

1. Tap > > **Settings**.
2. Tap **Storage**.
3. Under SD card, tap **Unmount SD card**, and then tap **OK**.
 - ❖ The menu option name changes from **Unmount SD Card** to **Mount SD Card**. The card is now unmounted.
4. Remove the microSD card. See [Remove SD Card](#).

Remove SD Card

Follow these instructions to remove an SD card. Always power the phone off before inserting or removing an SD card.

1. Turn off the phone.
2. Hold the phone face up.
3. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the microSD card tray slot until the tray ejects.






4. Gently pull the microSD card out of the slot.
5. Replace the microSD card and tray.

Format SD Card

When you insert an optional SD card for the first time, it is recommended that you format it on your phone.

Note: When you format or erase the microSD card, the files **CANNOT** be retrieved. To help prevent the loss of important data, please check the contents before you erase the card.

Important: Formatting or erasing the microSD card may not permanently erase all data from the card, including personal information.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Storage**.
3. Under SD card, tap **Unmount SD card**, and then tap **OK**.
4. Tap **Erase SD card** > **ERASE SD CARD**.

Note: If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to enter the screen lock before you can proceed.

5. Tap **Erase everything**.

 All data on the SD card is erased, and the card is formatted for use on your phone.

Charge the Battery

Follow these instructions to charge your phone's battery using either the included AC adapter or via a USB connection on your computer.

Note: Use only the adapter and the USB cable that came with your phone to charge the battery. When the battery power is too low, make sure to use the power adapter to charge, not the USB cable connection with your computer.

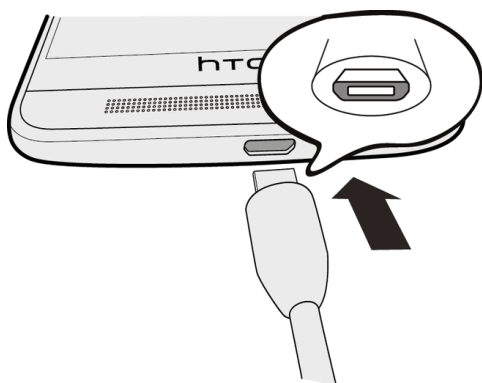
Note: As a safety precaution, the battery may stop charging to avoid overheating.

Note: When you're using the Internet and charging the battery, your phone may become warmer. This is normal.

Note: To conserve energy, unplug the power adapter from the electrical outlet after you finish charging.

Charge Using the AC Adapter

1. Plug one end of the USB cable into the AC adapter.
2. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the Charger/Accessory Jack on the bottom panel of your phone.



3. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the AC adapter.
4. Plug the AC adapter into an electrical outlet.
- ❖ The indicator light illuminates when charging starts. The light turns green when the battery is fully charged. Fully charging a battery may take up to three hours.
5. After charging, disconnect the phone from the charger.
 - Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet, and remove the USB cable from the phone.

Charge Using a PC Connection

Before using a PC connection to charge your phone, ensure that the computer is turned on. Depending on the type of connection, your phone's battery may not charge.

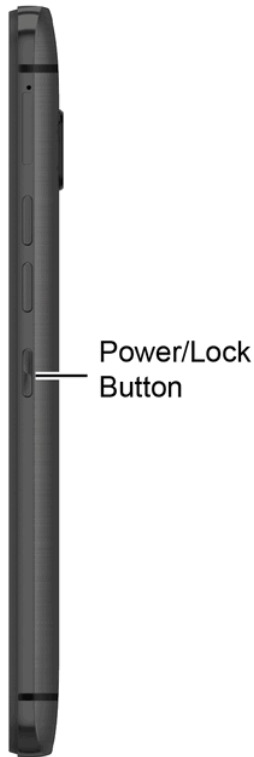
1. Insert the small end of the USB cable into the charger/accessory jack on the bottom of your phone.
2. Insert the large end of the USB cable into an external USB port on your computer.
3. After charging, disconnect the USB cable from both the phone and the computer.

Turn Your Phone On and Off

The instructions below explain how to turn your phone on and off.


Turn Your Phone On

- Press and hold the Power/Lock button () at the right panel of the phone.



You will feel or hear the phone vibrate when it has been turned on. The first time you turn on your phone, it will search for Sprint service, and begin the setup application.

Turn Your Phone Off

1. Press and hold the Power/Lock button () to open the Power options menu.

Note: When the screen is locked and you press the Power/Lock button it will only turn off the screen and not the phone. You will need to unlock the screen first before you press and hold the Power/Lock button to turn the phone off. See [Lock and Unlock Your Screen](#) for details.

2. Tap **Power off** to turn the phone off.

Restart Your Phone

Restarting the phone will close all running apps and will clear all temporary files in the phone's memory. Make sure to save your work before restarting the phone.

1. Press and hold the Power/Lock button for about two seconds.
2. On the Power options menu, tap **Restart**.

3. In the Restart phone confirmation box, tap **RESTART**.

Note: If the phone or touchscreen becomes unresponsive, press and hold the Power/Lock button for about 12 seconds to restart the phone.

Touchscreen Navigation

Use touch gestures to get around the Home screen, open apps, scroll through lists, and more.

Important: When the **TalkBack** option in the Accessibility settings is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

Tap or Touch

When you want to type using the onscreen keyboard, select items onscreen such as application and settings icons, or press onscreen buttons, simply tap or touch them with your finger.



Touch and Hold

To open the available options for an item (for example, a contact or link in a Web page), touch and hold the item.



Swipe or Slide

Quickly swipe your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen to go to other widget panels, scroll through documents, and more.



Drag

To drag, touch and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to drag. While dragging, do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.



Flick

Flicking the screen is similar to swiping, except that you need to swipe your finger in light, quick strokes. This finger gesture is always in a vertical direction, such as when flicking the contacts or message list.



Touch and Flick

On the Home screen, you can easily move a widget or icon from one screen to another. Touch and hold the widget or icon with one finger, and flick the screen to the new location with another finger.



Pinch and Spread

“Pinch” the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom out or “spread” the screen to zoom in when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers inward to zoom out and outward to zoom in.)

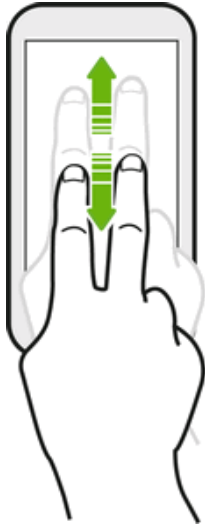


Slide two fingers together to zoom out of the picture or text.



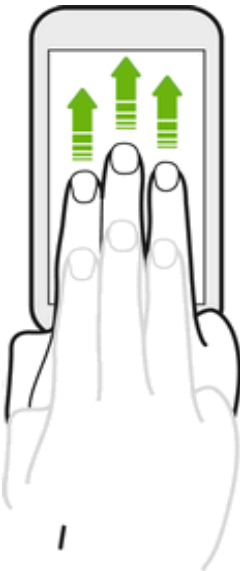
Two-finger Swipe

Swipe down from the status bar using two fingers to access Quick Settings.



Three-finger Gesture

- Swipe up using three fingers to share content such as photos, videos, and music from your phone. You can also share streaming media from apps such as YouTube™.
- Swipe down to disconnect from the device.



Note: Media gesture is turned on in Settings by default, which makes the three-finger gesture work only when sharing content or using HTC apps.

Note: The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

Three-finger Tap

While using the HTC Car app, tap the screen with three fingers to activate the voice command mode.

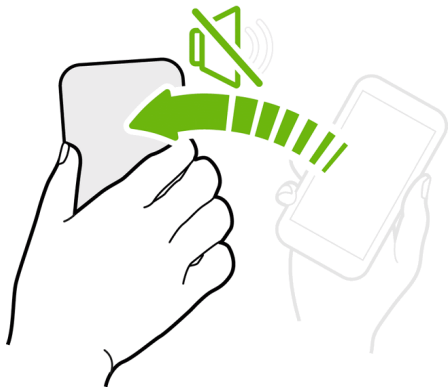


Motion Gestures

Use motion gestures to rotate the screen, mute, lower the ringtone volume, and more.

Flip to Mute

When a call comes in, you can turn your phone over to mute it.



To change the Flip to mute settings:

1. Tap > > **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification** > **Flip to mute**, and select a setting:




- **Mute once.** Mute only once after you flipped the phone. The phone will ring again when there are subsequent incoming calls.
- **Mute always.** After flipping the phone to mute a call, keep it always muted for all incoming calls.

Pick Up to Lower Volume

In a business meeting or restaurant, pick your phone up when a call comes in to lower the ringtone volume.



You can turn this feature on or off.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**, and then select or clear **Quiet ring on pickup**.

Set Volume to Automatically Increase While in Your Pocket or Bag

You can set your phone to recognize when it's in your bag or pocket and raise the ringtone volume so that you can hear it in noisy environments.

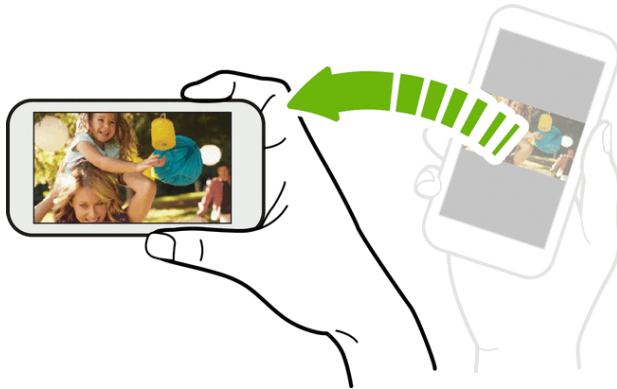


You can turn this feature on or off.



1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**, and then select or clear **Pocket mode**.

Rotate Your Phone for a Better View

For most screens, you can automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the phone sideways. When entering text, you can turn the phone sideways to bring up a bigger keyboard. See [HTC Sense Keyboard](#) for more details.



To turn this feature off:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**, and then clear the **Autorotate screen** option.

Note: The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

Activate Your Phone

Follow the instructions below to activate your phone if it has not already been activated. Depending on your account or how and where you purchased your phone, it may be ready to use or you may need to activate it on your Sprint account.

- If you purchased your phone at a Sprint Store, it is probably activated and ready to use.
- If you received your phone in the mail and it is for a new Sprint account or a new line of service, it is designed to activate automatically.
 - When you turn the phone on for the first time, you should see a **Hands Free Activation** screen, which may be followed by a **PRL Update** screen and a **Firmware Update** screen. Follow the onscreen instructions to continue.
- If you received your phone in the mail and you are activating a new phone for an existing number on your account (you're swapping phones), you can activate on your computer online or directly on your phone.
 - **Activate on your computer:**

- Go to sprint.com/activate and complete the online instructions to activate your phone.
- **Activate on your phone:**
 - Turn on your new phone. (Make sure the old one is turned off.) Your phone will automatically attempt Hands-Free Activation.
 - Tap **Activate** to override auto-activation and start the manual activation wizard.
 - Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the activation process.

To confirm activation, make a phone call. If your phone is still not activated, visit sprint.com/support for assistance. If you do not have access to the Internet, call Sprint Customer Service at **1-888-211-4727** from another phone.

Tip: Do not press the Power/Lock button while the phone is being activated. Pressing the Power/Lock button cancels the activation process.

Note: If you are having any difficulty with activation, visit sprint.com/support.

Complete the Setup Screens

The setup screens help you set up certain features and preferences on your phone. Once your phone has been turned on, you will see a Welcome message. You can then complete the setup process.

Note: You may be able to complete the setup screens before your phone has been activated on your Sprint account.

1. From the Welcome screen, select a language and tap **START** to get started.



- To skip any section, tap **NEXT** or **SKIP**.

Note: If you are visually impaired or hard of hearing, touch and hold the screen with two fingers to enable TalkBack. Tap **ACCESSIBILITY SETTINGS** to change accessibility options.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete each section. For each topic, you will have the option to skip it and continue to the next screen.

- **Terms of use.** Read the terms of use and tap **NEXT**.
- **Connect to Wi-Fi.** Connect to a Wi-Fi® network. For more information, see [Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network](#).
- **Hands Free Activation.** See [Activate This Device](#).
- **Tap & Go.** Quickly copy Google® Accounts, backed up apps, and data from your existing Android™ device using NFC.
- **Add your account.** Enter your Google Account and password. If you don't have a Google Account, tap **OR CREATE A NEW ACCOUNT**. See [Add a Gmail Account](#) for details.

Note: You do not need to sign up for a Google Account to use your phone. However, to download apps from the Google Play™ Store or chat in Google+™ Hangouts™, you must link your phone to a Google Account.

- **Get your apps & data.** If you have backed up your old phone's data to your Google Account, you can easily restore that backup on your new phone.
 - If you want to restore a previous device backup, tap ▼ next to the backed up device name, select the backup you want to restore, and then tap **DONE**. Tap ▼ next to **All apps**, select which apps you want restored on your new phone, and then tap **DONE**. Tap **NEXT**.
 - If you don't want to restore any backup, tap ▼ next to the backed up device name, select **Set up as new device**, and then tap **DONE**. Tap **NEXT**.
- **Google location.** Choose whether to use Google's location service. For more information, see [Location Setting](#) and [Google Location Reporting](#).
- **Transfer or restore content.** If you want to transfer content from an old phone to your new HTC phone, choose **Transfer content**. See [Transfer Content to Your New Phone](#).



Or if you want to restore your apps and settings from a backup you've created in your online storage, select **Restore from HTC Backup**, and sign in to your HTC Account. See [Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone](#).

- **HTC Backup.** This screen shows apps, social accounts, contacts, and more that you've set up and gives you the option to back up your phone daily to your online storage. For more information, see [Backup](#).

- **Accounts & sync.** Set up your email and social network accounts including Google, Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync®, Mail, HTC Account, LinkedIn®, Outlook.com, Twitter, and Instagram.
- **Name and secure your phone.** Give your new phone a name or set up a screen lock to help secure your phone.
- **Personalize HTC Sense Home.** Choose to share your location and personal usage data for relevant apps and information recommendations on the HTC Sense® Home.

3. Tap **FINISH**.

- ❖ Your phone is now set up for use. If you skipped any part of the setup, you can access additional options through the Apps screen or through Settings.

Note: During or after setup, you may see a **Connections Optimizer** notice. Read the notice and tap **I Agree** to allow your phone to connect automatically to the best available data network, including Wi-Fi. To turn Connections Optimizer off at any time, from home, tap  >  **Settings** > **Mobile data** > **Automatic Connections** and uncheck the **Sprint Connections Optimizer** box. See [Connections Optimizer](#) for details.

Note: Some features that need to connect to the Internet such as location-based services and auto-sync of your online accounts may incur extra data fees. To avoid incurring data fees, disable these features under Settings.

Transfer Content to Your New Phone

You can easily transfer content, contacts, messages, calendar events, music, photos, videos, and more from other phones or your computer to your new phone using the HTC Transfer Tool, Bluetooth®, or direct USB connection.

Transfer Content from an Android Phone

On your old Android phone, download the HTC Transfer Tool and use it to transfer your content to your new HTC phone. The types of locally stored content on your old phone that the tool can transfer include contacts, messages, calendar events, Web bookmarks, music, photos, and videos. Some settings can also be transferred.

Note: You need Android version 2.2 or later to use the HTC Transfer Tool on your old phone.

Note: If your old phone has Android version 2.1 or an earlier version, you need to use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see [Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth](#).

1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Transfer content** on the Transfer or restore content screen.

— or —

Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Get content from another phone**.

2. Choose whether to transfer from an old HTC Android phone or other Android phone.
3. Tap **Full transfer**, and then tap **NEXT**.
4. Follow the steps shown on your new phone to download and install the HTC Transfer Tool from Google Play to your old phone, install it, and open the tool.
5. When you see a PIN on your old phone, make sure the same PIN also appears on your new phone before you continue.



Note: If the PIN code doesn't appear, this may mean that your old phone is unable to connect to your new phone. If this happens, tap **Try another transfer method** on your new phone to use Bluetooth for transferring contacts from your old phone.

6. On your old phone, choose the types of content you want to transfer, and then tap **START** or **TRANSFER**.
7. Wait for the transfer to finish.
8. Tap **DONE** on both phones.

Transfer Content from an iPhone




If you have an iPhone®, there are 3 easy ways to transfer your contacts, messages, and other content to your HTC One M9.

- Back up and restore iPhone content through iCloud®. For details, see [Transfer iPhone Content Through iCloud](#).
- Back up iPhone content using iTunes® on your computer, and then use HTC Sync Manager to transfer the content to HTC One M9. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).

- If you only need to copy your contacts, you can use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see [Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth](#).

Transfer iPhone Content Through iCloud

If you have an iCloud account, sync iPhone content to your iCloud storage, and then transfer the content to HTC One M9. You can transfer the following types of content from iCloud: contacts, bookmarks, text messages, messages from iMessage®, calendar events, and photos.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Get content from another phone**.
2. Tap **iPhone** > **Import from iCloud backup**.
3. Enter your iCloud email address and password.
4. Follow the steps shown onscreen to back up your iPhone content to your iCloud storage, and then tap **SIGN IN**.
5. Choose the iPhone backup that you want to transfer to HTC One M9, and then tap **NEXT**.
6. Choose the types of content you want to transfer, and then tap **IMPORT**.
7. Wait for the transfer to finish, and then tap **DONE**.

Note: Only some contact details can be transferred, such as the contact name, photo, postal address, email address, birthdate, anniversary date, and notes.

Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth

Use Bluetooth to transfer contacts from an iPhone, a phone that has Android version 2.1 (or earlier version), or other types of phones.

1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Transfer content** on the Transfer or restore content screen.

– or –

Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Get content from another phone**.

2. Choose whether to transfer from an Android phone, iPhone, or other phone types. If you chose to transfer from an Android phone, tap **Quick transfer**.
3. On your old phone, turn Bluetooth on and set it to discoverable mode.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions on your old and new phones to pair them and start the data transfer.

Note: Depending on the capabilities of your old phone, you may be able to transfer not only contacts but also other data such as calendar events and text messages through Bluetooth.

Note: Use your iCloud storage or HTC Sync Manager to transfer more types of content from an iPhone. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).

Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer

There are two ways you can transfer content to or from your computer.

- **Connect your phone to your computer.** Your computer will recognize it just like any removable USB drive, and you can copy your media between them.
- **Download and use the HTC Sync Manager software on your computer.** You can set it up to automatically get music, photos, and videos off your phone to your computer. You can also sync playlists from your computer to the phone.

If you have an iPhone, you can even connect it and transfer the camera roll (photos and videos) to your computer. Then reconnect your phone and copy them over. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).

Tired of keeping copies of your media in several places? Use online storage services to put your media in one place so you can manage them anywhere — on your computer, phone, and other mobile devices.

Go to **Settings**, and then tap **Accounts & sync** > **+** to check first what online storage accounts are available on your phone. Sign in to the one you want to use and then use the Gallery app to access media in your online storage.

Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone

There are different ways you can individually add contacts and other content to your new HTC phone.

- **Sync with your computer.** Use HTC Sync Manager to sync contacts, documents, playlists, and more between your phone and a computer running a Windows® or Mac OS® operating system. You can also use it to transfer iTunes backup that contains contacts, messages, and other content from an iPhone to your computer, and then to your HTC phone. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).
- **Google Account.** Google contacts are imported to your phone after you sign in to your Google Account. You can also create more Google contacts right from your phone.
- **Social network accounts.** Log in to your favorite social networks to sync contact information from them.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.** Your phone syncs your work contacts from the Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync Server in your workplace.
- **Phone contacts.** You can create contacts locally on your phone, if you don't prefer to store them on your online accounts.

Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone

If you used HTC Backup before, you can restore your backup to your new HTC phone when you turn the phone on for the first time or after a factory reset.

Important: Depending on the amount of content, restoring your backup to your phone through your data connection may use a lot of time and data. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

1. On the Transfer or restore content screen, select **Restore from HTC Backup**, and sign in to your HTC Account or Google Account.
2. Use your mobile data or Wi-Fi connection to connect your phone to the Internet.

If you used your Google login credentials as your HTC Account and your backup is in Google Drive™, tap **Sign in with Google**.

If not, tap **Remind me later**, go to the Transfer or restore content screen, and select **Restore from HTC Backup**.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions to restore your backup and to continue setting up your phone.
4. Slide open the Notifications panel to check if there's any notification to finish setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar. To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

Your apps will appear on the Apps screen as they are installed. The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

Basic Operations

The following topics outline basic features and operations of your phone.

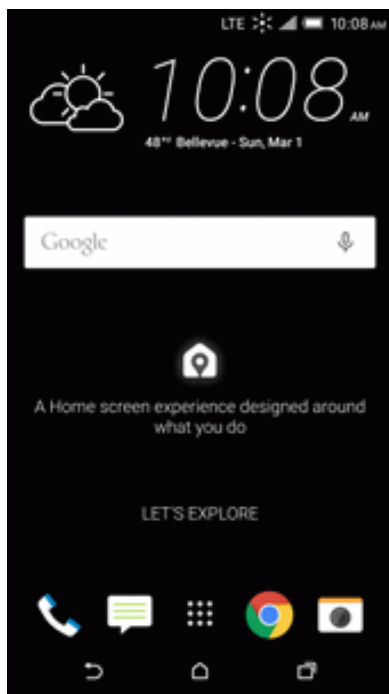
Basics

The following topics offer an overview of your phone's basic operations.


Home Screen and Applications (Apps) List

Most of your phone's operations originate from the home screen or the apps list.

The first time you turned on the phone, tap **Tap to personalize** and then tap **LET'S EXPLORE** to personalize the home screen with the HTC Sense Home widget.



- Swipe left and you'll discover widget panels for adding your favorite widgets, apps, and more so they're just a tap away. And if you need more room for your stuff, you can add more widget panels. For details, see [Customize the Home Screen](#).
- Swipe right for HTC BlinkFeed® to show posts from your social networks, headlines from your favorite news media, and more. For details, see [HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen](#).
- You can change the apps on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen. See [Customize the Launch Bar](#).

- You can add an onscreen navigation key. See [Onscreen Navigation Keys](#) for details.
- Tap  to see all apps installed on your phone.




Tip: While you're in another screen or app, tap  to return to the last Home screen you visited.

Onscreen Navigation Keys

Your phone has onscreen navigation keys at the bottom of the screen which rotate when you change the orientation. The onscreen navigation keys do not show up when the screen is off, when you're on the Camera viewfinder screen, or when you chose to hide it.




Standard Navigation Keys








Key	Description
Back 	Go to the previous screen.
Home 	Go to the Home screen.
Recent apps 	Show the thumbnails of the most recently used apps and Google Chrome tabs.

Customizable Navigation Key

You can add a fourth navigation key.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize** > **Change navigation buttons**.
3. Select the fourth navigation key.

Key	Description
Turn off screen 	Puts the phone to sleep mode.
Auto rotate 	Turn auto rotate screen on or off.
Notifications 	Shows the notification list.
Hide navigation bar 	Hides the navigation bar.
Quick settings 	Shows the available Quick Settings.





4. Drag the key to the desired position on the onscreen navigation bar.
5. Tap **DONE**.

Tip: Swipe up from any of the navigation keys to access Google Search.

Get to Know Your Settings

Change the ringtone, set up a Wi-Fi connection, add your accounts, and more in Settings.

1. Open Settings either from the Quick Settings panel or Apps screen.

- Swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
- Tap  >  >  **Settings**.

2. Here are some of the basic settings you can change:

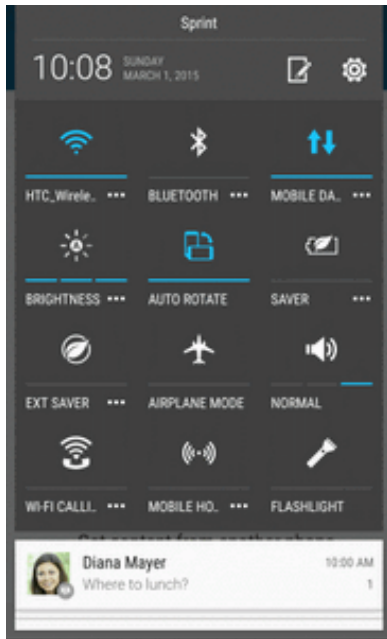
- Tap the ON/OFF switch next to an item such as **Wi-Fi** to turn it on or off. Tap the item itself to configure its settings.
- Tap **Sound & notification** to set a ringtone, choose a sound profile, and configure incoming call sound settings.
- Tap **Personalize** to change the wallpaper, add widgets and shortcuts to the widget panel, and more.
- Tap **Accounts & sync** to add and sign in to your different accounts, such as email, social networks, and more.
- Tap **Security** to help secure your phone, for example with a screen lock.

For more information, see [Settings](#).

Using Quick Settings

In the Quick Settings panel, easily turn settings such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on or off.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.



2. To turn a setting on or off, just tap its tile.
3. To change the options for a setting, touch and hold its tile. Or tap **⋮**.

Tip: To switch to the Notifications panel, swipe up the Quick Settings panel. To switch back to the Quick Settings panel, swipe down the Notifications panel.

Customize Quick Settings

Aside from the default tiles, there are several other tiles available in Quick Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap **✎** and do one of the following:
 - In the Quick Settings list, touch and hold **≡** next to the item you want to move and drag it to rearrange the list.
 - Under Hidden items, touch and hold **≡** and drag it up to make it available in Quick Settings.




Note: There is a limit to the number of tiles that can be shown in Quick Settings. You may need to remove an existing item to make space for another one. To remove an item, drag it below Hidden items.

Capture Screenshots

Capture the phone screen to show off your high game score, write a blog post about your phone's features, or post a status update about a song you're playing.

- Press and hold the Power/Lock button and the **Volume Down** button at the same time.

The image is saved in the Screenshots album in Gallery.

















Tip: To share the image immediately after capturing, wait until you see the icon  in the status bar. Slide the Notifications panel open, and tap  under the Screenshot notification. If you don't see , spread two fingers apart on the screenshot notification.
























Applications























The following topics describe how to access the Applications (Apps) screen and launch apps on your phone.










Apps List

The Apps screen includes any apps you download and install on your phone. The following table outlines the primary apps that have been preinstalled on your phone.

App	Function/Service
 1Weather	Check out the latest in weather news and forecast.
 Amazon	Shop the Internet using the Amazon app.
 App Pass	Gain access to hundreds of top paid apps using a single subscription.
 Calculator	Perform basic and advanced mathematical operations. See Calculator .
 Calendar	View, create and send events. See Calendar .
 Camera	Take photos and capture videos. See Camera and Video .
 Car	Navigate to your destination, plus more. See HTC Car .
 Chrome	Browse the Internet. See Chrome Browser .
 Clock	Check the time, set an alarm, or use the World Clock, Stopwatch and Timer. See Clock .
 Cloudex	Save and view your photos online.
 Downloads	View all your downloaded files here.
 Drive	Manage your Google Drive online storage. See Google Drive .
 eBay	Buy and sell stuff over the Internet with this e-commerce app.
 Emergency Alerts	View emergency alerts.
 FamilyWall for Sprint	Organize and share media files privately with your family.
 File Manager	Organize files and folders on your phone and storage card. See File Manager .



App	Function/Service
 Gallery	View your photos and videos. See View Pictures and Videos Using Gallery .
 Gmail	Create, send, and receive emails. See Create and Send Gmail .
 Google	Open Google Search or Google Now. See Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone and Get Instant Information with Google Now .
 Google Settings	Set your Google Search, Google Now, and other Google Mobile Services options.
 Google+	Post statuses, share photos, and write comments with your circle of friends.
 Hangouts	Send SMS, MMS, or start a video chat. See Hangouts .
 Help	Find useful content on how to use your phone, view troubleshooting information, and more. See HTC Help .
 HTC Backup	Back up your files using online storages. See Backup .
 HTC DotView	Personalize your phone with the optional HTC DotView case. See HTC Dot View .
 HTC Mobile Guide	View your phone's online user guide.
 KeyVPN	Connect to your company's intranet via VPN.
 Kid Mode	Let your kids enjoy appropriate content on your phone. See Kid Mode .
 Lookout	Help protect your phone from viruses and other threats.
 Mail	Add POP3/IMAP and Exchange ActiveSync email accounts on your phone. See Email .
 Maps	View maps and get detailed turn-by-turn navigation to your destination. See Google Maps .
 Media Share	Share your phone content to capable media devices. See HTC Connect .
 Messages	Create and send text and multimedia messages. See Text and Multimedia Messaging .
 Messaging+	Create and send text and multimedia messages and more.
 Music	Listen to your favorite music tracks and even sing-along with lyrics and cool visualizations.
 NASCAR Mobile 2014	Check out the latest happenings and events in NASCAR.
 NBA Game Time	View what's going on and coming up in the NBA.
 News & Weather	View news and weather in using this app.
 NextRadio	Stream radio stations from all over the world.

App	Function/Service
 Peel Smart Remote	Control your TV, home theatre, and audio system using your phone.
 People	Add, manage, and get in touch with people that matter to you most. See Contacts .
 Phone	Call friends and access your voicemail. See Phone App .
 Photo Editor	Add effects to your photos. See Photo Editor .
 Photos	View photos and videos you've saved online.
 Play Books	Scan, buy, and download books and other reading materials to your phone.
 Play Games	Search, buy, and install games to your phone.
 Play Movies & TV	Search, buy, and watch movies and shows on your phone.
 Play Music	Search, buy, and listen to music on your phone.
 Play Newsstand	Search, buy, and read newspapers, magazines, and other circulations on your phone.
 Play Store	Search, buy, and install apps to your phone. See Google Play Store .
 POLARIS Office 5	View and edit office documents.
 Scout	View maps and get turn-by-turn navigation to your destination. See Scout .
 Scribble	Create notes and photo blogs and then share or publish them. See Scribble .
 Settings	Change your phone settings. See Settings .
 Setup	Run the setup wizard and complete the setup screens. See Complete the Setup Screens .
 Spotify	Stream music to your phone.
 Sprint Family Locator	Locate your family member's whereabouts with this essential app.
 Sprint Fun & Games	Search, download, and play fun games on your phone.
 Sprint Music Plus	Search, download, and listen to music tracks on your phone.
 Sprint TV & Movies	Search, download, and watch movies and shows on your phone.
 Sprint Zone	Manage your Sprint account from your phone.

App	Function/Service
 Themes	Personalize your phone with themes. See Themes .
 Twitter	Send and receive tweets on your phone. See Twitter .
 Uber	Use this app if you need a ride to your destination where Uber service is available.
 Voice Recorder	Record and share your voice or create a voice memo. See Voice Recorder .
 Voice Search	Search the Web using your voice. See Search the Web with Your Voice .
 Voicemail	Check and read your voicemail messages. See Visual Voicemail .
 Weather	Check the weather in your location and in other cities around the world. See Check the Weather .
 YouTube	Watch or upload videos online. See YouTube .
 Zoe	Create Zoes and share them with your Zoe community.

Open an App

There are several options for opening an app from the Home screen.

- Tap an app on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen.
- Tap  to go to the Apps screen, and then tap the app you want to use.
- On the Apps screen, tap , and then enter the name of the app you're looking for.

Open an App or Folder from the Lock Screen


- On the lock screen, drag an app or folder icon up to unlock the screen and directly go to the app or folder.


If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before your phone opens the app or folder.

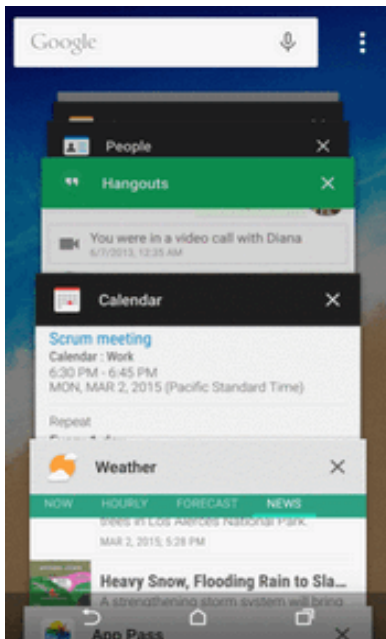
Tip: The shortcuts on the lock screen are the same ones on your Home screen's launch bar. To change the lock screen shortcuts, you'll have to replace the apps or folders on the launch bar.

Switch Between Recently Opened Apps

When you're multitasking and using different apps on your phone or opened multiple Web pages from the Web browser, you can easily switch between the apps or Web pages you've recently opened.

- Tap  to see recently-opened apps.
 - To switch back to an app, just tap it.

- To remove an app from the list, drag it up.
- To clear the recent apps list, tap .



Tip: You can change the view of your recent apps. Tap  > **Settings > Layout**, and then choose between **Card view** or **Grid view**.

Refresh Content

In some apps, you can easily refresh content that's synced or downloaded from the Web with a simple finger gesture.




1. While viewing content such as weather or Mail inbox, scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Pull down the screen with your finger, and then release to refresh.










Arrange Apps on the Apps Screen






Personalize the Apps screen to your liking. You can rearrange the apps and change the layout.

1. Tap  > .
2. Tap  and then choose how to arrange apps, such as alphabetically. If you want to group apps into folders or rearrange them, select **Custom**.






Move Apps and Folders

1. Tap  > .
2. Tap  > **Custom**.
3. Tap  > **Rearrange apps**.
4. Touch and hold an app or folder, and then do one of the following:
 - Drag the app to another position on the same page. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
 - Drag the app to the  or  arrow to move it to another page.
5. When you're done moving apps and folders, tap .




Group Apps into Folders

1. Tap  > .
2. Tap  > **Custom**.
3. Tap  > **Rearrange apps**.
4. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it over to another app to automatically create a folder.
5. To add more apps, drag each app over to the folder.
6. To name the folder, open the folder, tap its title bar, and then enter a folder name.
7. When you're done grouping apps and folders, tap .

Remove Apps from a Folder




1. Tap  > .
2. Tap  > **Custom**.
3. Tap  > **Rearrange apps**.
4. Tap the folder to open it.
5. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it out to the Apps screen. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
6. When you're done removing apps, tap .

Hide or Show Apps on the Apps Screen

1. Tap  > .
2. Tap  > **Hide/Unhide apps**.
3. Select the apps you want to hide, or clear their check boxes to unhide them.
4. Tap **DONE**.

Phone Number

Follow the instructions below to display your phone's wireless phone number.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **About** > **Phone identity**.
 - ❖ You will see the number listed under **Phone number**.

Silent Mode

Silent mode sets your phone's ringtone, operation sounds, notifications, etc., not to sound to avoid disturbing others around you.




Note: Camera shutter, video start/stop tones, and certain other sounds may still be active during silent mode.

To set to silent mode:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification** > **Sound profile**.
3. Select **Silent**.

Tip: You can also set the phone to silent mode using Quick Settings. See [Using Quick Settings](#) for details.

To restore the sound to normal mode:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification** > **Sound profile**.
3. Select **Normal**.

❖ Your phone's sound settings are now restored.

Tip: You can also restore the phone sound using Quick Settings. See [Using Quick Settings](#) for details.

Airplane Mode

When you enable Airplane (flight) mode, all wireless radios on your phone are turned off, including the call function, data services, Bluetooth, and Wi-Fi. You can still use many of your phone's features, such as Gallery, Camera, and Music, when you are on an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

When you disable Airplane mode, the call function is turned back on and the previous state of Bluetooth and Wi-Fi is restored.

Note: You can manually turn Bluetooth and Wi-Fi back on after enabling Airplane mode.

Note: If USB tethering is turned on, enabling Airplane mode turns it off. You need to manually turn USB tethering on after you disable Airplane mode.

- Do any of the following to turn Airplane mode on or off:
 - Press and hold the Power/Lock button, and then tap **Airplane mode**.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings. Tap the **AIRPLANE MODE** tile to turn airplane mode on or off.

When enabled, the Airplane mode icon  is displayed in the status bar.

Enter Text

You can type on your phone using one of the available touchscreen keyboards or Google voice typing.

HTC Sense Keyboard

Typing is fast and accurate with the HTC Sense keyboard.




- Word prediction also saves typing time. As you type, you'll see word suggestions that you can choose from. You can even add words, phrases, and shortcuts to the word prediction dictionary. For details, see [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).
- You can type words by just speaking. For details, see [Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).
- Turn on the **Trace keyboard** so you can type words by just sliding your finger from one letter to another. For details, see [Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard](#).
- Just swipe right to access the numeric and symbol keyboard. Or swipe left to switch between languages.
- The keys have secondary numbers, punctuation symbols, or other characters that you can quickly insert without having to switch to the numeric and symbol keyboard. For example, just touch and hold a key on the first row to insert a number.
- Choose from a wide selection of emojis.
- Show or hide navigational arrow keys on the keyboard. If you enable the arrow keys in Settings, they'll only appear on the portrait keyboard.

And since everyone has their own typing style, you can calibrate the keyboard in so it learns how you type. See [Calibrate the Keyboard](#).

Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard

The onscreen keyboard becomes available when you tap a text field in an app. Enter letters and numbers, change the keyboard layout or language, and more.








- Tap the keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter letters and numbers, as well as punctuation marks and symbols.
 - Tap  to enter an uppercase letter. Tap  twice to turn on caps lock.
 - Tap and hold keys with gray characters at the top to enter numbers, symbols, or accented letters. Some keys have multiple characters or accents associated with them.
 - Swipe right to show number and symbol keys. To return to the main keyboard, swipe left.
 - If you selected multiple keyboard language, swipe left from the main keyboard to switch to the other keyboard language.
 - On supported apps, turn the phone sideways to show a larger Standard keyboard that lets you type easily using two thumbs.
 - Tap  to close the onscreen keyboard.

Tip: To open the keyboard settings, touch and hold the comma key until you see  above the key. Or go to **Settings > Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input**.

Change the HTC Sense Keyboard Language

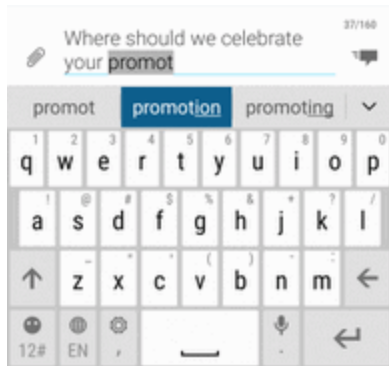
If multiple keyboard languages are available on your phone, you can choose which languages to enable in the onscreen keyboard.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input > Keyboard selection**.
3. Choose the languages you want and tap .
4. To change the keyboard language, do any of the following while entering text:
 - Swipe left on the onscreen keyboard (not available if you're using trace keyboard).
 - Tap the language key  until you see the language you want to use.
 - Touch and hold the language key, and then drag your finger to the keyboard language you want to use.



Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard

The onscreen keyboard has predictive text to help you type quickly and accurately. Predictive text input is enabled by default, and word suggestions are displayed as you type.



To enter a word in predictive mode, do any of the following:

- Tap the space bar to insert the highlighted word in the suggestion list.
- Tap a word from the suggestion list.
- Tap the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

Tip: If you've accidentally chosen a wrong word from the suggestion list, you can always go back and change it by tapping the word and selecting another suggestion.

Set a Second Language for Word Prediction

You can set the word prediction to be bilingual. As you type, you'll get word suggestions in the languages that you've selected.





Note: Bilingual prediction is available only when you're using a Latin-based keyboard.

1. Tap > > **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input** > **Keyboard selection**.
3. Tap **Bilingual prediction**, and then choose the language you want.

Add Words and Phrases to the Word Prediction Dictionary





Add frequently-used names, acronyms, and even phrases to the word prediction dictionary to easily find them in the suggestion list.

Type even faster when you create text shortcuts for words and phrases. Instead of typing "**Talk to you later**", save a few keystrokes by adding the **ttyl** shortcut. In your message or email, just type "**ttyl**", and then tap the spacebar to enter the complete phrase.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
3. Tap **Personal dictionary** > .
4. Enter a word or phrase, and then enter its text shortcut. Be sure to remember this shortcut, including the uppercase and lowercase letters you've typed.
5. Tap **OK**.

While you're entering text using the Standard keyboard layout, tapping an underlined word lets you store it in the dictionary or replace it with a suggested word.




Edit or Delete Words and Phrases in the Word Prediction Dictionary


1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
3. Tap **Personal dictionary**.
 - To edit a word, phrase, or shortcut, tap the item in the list.
 - To delete items from the dictionary, tap  > **Delete**. Select the words you want to remove, and then tap **DELETE**.

Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard

Instead of tapping the keys on the onscreen keyboard, you can "trace" to type words.

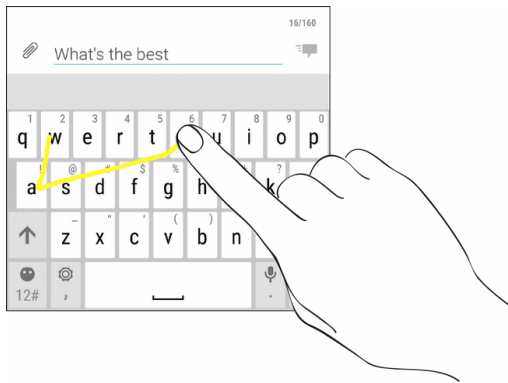
Turn On Trace Keyboard

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.

3. Select the **Trace keyboard** option.
4. Tap .

Enter Text Using Trace Keyboard


1. Tap an area where you want to enter text.
2. Slide your finger from one letter to the next to enter a word.
3. Lift your finger when the word is completed.




4. If the word that appears after you traced isn't the one you want, you can:
 - Tap a word from the suggestion list.
 - Tap the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard

Try speaking the words to enter them in most text fields that let you use the touch input keyboard.




1. Tap an area where you want to enter text.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold .
3. When you see the microphone image, speak out the words you want to type.

Tip: To set the voice input language, tap  > **Settings > Languages**. You can choose one or more languages. Available languages depend on the voice input languages supported by Google.

4. If a word doesn't match what you've spoken and it's underlined, tap the underlined word to delete it or to see more choices.
5. Enter punctuation marks by saying the name (for example, say "comma").

Calibrate the Keyboard

You can calibrate the keyboard to suit your typing style.

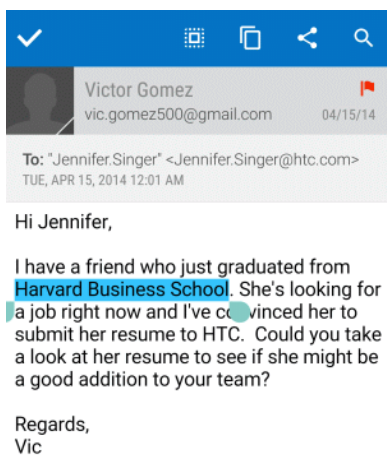
1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
3. Tap **Advanced** > **Calibration tool**.
4. Follow screen instructions to calibrate the keyboard.



Edit Text

In HTC apps, such as Messages, you can select and copy text, and then paste or share it.

Select, Copy, and Paste Text


1. Touch and hold on a word.
2. Drag the start and end anchors to highlight the surrounding text you want to select.



3. After you have selected the text you want to copy, tap . The selected text is then copied to the clipboard.
4. In a text entry field (for example while composing an email), touch and hold at the point where you want to paste the text.
5. Tap .

Tip: To copy the address of a linked webpage, touch and hold the link, and then tap **Copy link address**.

Share Text

1. After you have selected the text you want to share, tap .
2. Choose where to paste and share the selected text, such as in an email message or social network status update.

Google Account

You will need a Google Account to access several phone features such as Gmail, Google Maps, Hangouts, and the Google Play applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your phone and your online Google Account.

Google Account Cautions

Be sure not to forget your Google Account ID or password.

Create a Google Account

If you do not already have a Google Account, you can create one online or using your phone.





Note: You can also create and sign into your Google/Gmail account through your phone's Setup application.




Note: Although you need a Gmail account to use certain features of your phone, such as Google Play, you do not need to use Gmail as the default email account for your phone.

Create a Google Account Online

1. From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to google.com.
2. On the main page, click **Signin** > **Create an account**.
3. Follow the onscreen prompts to create your free account.
4. Navigate to your the Gmail inbox.







Create a Google Account Using Your Phone

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Accounts & sync**.
 2. Tap  > **Google**.
 3. Tap **OR CREATE A NEW ACCOUNT**.
 4. Enter your first name and last name, and then tap **NEXT**.
 5. Enter your desired email address, and then tap **NEXT**.
 6. When prompted, enter and re-enter a password, and then tap **NEXT**.
 7. In the Rescue info screen, enter the phone number to use to recover your account password in case you forgot or tap **REMIND ME LATER** to do this later. Tap **NEXT**.
- ❖ If you've entered a phone number, a security code will be sent to that phone and you will be asked to enter the code in the Verify phone number screen.

8. Tap **ACCEPT** to agree to the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy, and then tap **NEXT**.
9. In the Google services screen, tap **NEXT**.
10. In the Sync your account screen, select the items you would like to sync with your phone and then tap **NEXT**.
 - ❖ You are signed in to your Google Account, and your phone will synchronize the selected items.
11. To go to your Gmail inbox, tap  >  >  Gmail.

Sign In to Your Google Account

If you have a Google Account but have not yet signed in with your phone, follow these instructions to sign in to your Google Account.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Accounts & sync**.
2. Enter your email address and tap **NEXT**.
3. Enter your password and tap **NEXT**.
4. Select the items you would like to sync with your phone and then tap **NEXT**.
 - ❖ You are signed in to your Google Account, and your phone will synchronize the selected items.
5. To go to your Gmail inbox, tap  >  >  Gmail.

Google Play Store

Google Play is the place to go to find new Android apps, books, movies, and music for your phone. Choose from a wide variety of free and paid content ranging from productivity apps and games to bestselling books and blockbuster movies and music. When you find what you want, you can easily download and install it on your phone.

To access the Google Play store app, you must first connect to the Internet using your phone's Wi-Fi or mobile data connection and sign in to your Google Account. See [Sign In to Your Google Account](#) for details.

Installing Applications






Many different kinds of applications can be installed on your phone from Google Play (provided by Google Inc.). The company is not responsible in any way for user-installed applications (quality, reliability, legality, fitness for a purpose, credibility, accuracy, etc.) or resulting malfunctions (viruses, etc.).

Important: Our policies often do not apply to third-party applications. Third-party applications may access your personal information or require us to disclose your customer information to the third-party application provider. To find out how a third-party application will collect, access, use, or disclose your personal information, check the application provider's policies, which can usually be

found on their website. If you aren't comfortable with the third-party application's policies, don't use the application.

Find and Install an App

When you install apps from Google Play app and use them on your phone, they may require access to your personal information (such as your location, contact data, and more) or access to certain functions or settings on your phone. Download and install only apps that you trust.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. When you open the Google Play Store app for the first time, the Terms of Service window will appear. Tap **ACCEPT** to continue.
3. Browse through the categories (**APPS**, **GAMES**, **MOVIES & TV**, **MUSIC**, **BOOKS**, or **NEWSSTAND**), find an item you're interested in, and tap the name.
 - Browse through featured apps. Scroll through the list of featured apps when you open Google Play.
 - Browse apps recommended by Sprint. Tap **APPS** > **SPRINT**, and then scroll through the list.
 - Search for an app. Tap  on the Google Play home screen, enter the name or type of app you're looking for, and then tap  on the keyboard.
4. Tap an app to read a description about the app and user reviews.
5. Tap **Install** (for free applications) or the price (for paid applications).

Note: You need a Google Wallet account to purchase items on Google Play. See [Google Wallet](#) to set up a Google Wallet account if you do not have one.

6. The subsequent screen notifies you whether the app will require access to your personal information or access to certain functions or settings of your phone. If you agree to the conditions, tap **ACCEPT** (for free apps) or **ACCEPT** and then **BUY** (for paid apps) to begin downloading and installing the app.
 - If you selected a paid application, after tapping **OK**, you're redirected to the Google Wallet screen to pay for the application before it's downloaded to your phone.
- ❖ The selected app is downloaded and installed on your phone.

Warning: Read the notification carefully! Be especially cautious with applications that have access to many functions or a significant amount of your data. Once you tap **OK** on this screen, you are responsible for the results of using this item on your phone.

Tip: Apps sometimes get updated with improvements or bug fixes. To automatically download updates, after installing, tap  > **Auto-update**.





Purchasing Applications

Purchase apps at your own risk. The company is not responsible for any disadvantage resulting from use of third party apps.

Request a Refund for a Paid App

If you are not satisfied with an app, you can ask for a refund within 15 minutes of the purchase. Your credit card is not charged and the app is uninstalled from your phone.





If you change your mind, you can install the app again, but you can't request a refund a second time.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  > **My apps**.
3. Tap the app to uninstall for a refund. The details screen for the app opens.
4. Tap **REFUND**, and then tap **YES** to confirm. Your app is uninstalled and the charge is cancelled.





Update an App

Depending on your settings, many apps will update automatically, or you can update apps directly from the Play Store app.

Update an App Directly

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
 2. Tap  > **My apps**.
 3. Tap the app you want to update, and then tap **UPDATE > ACCEPT**.
- ❖ The app update is downloaded and installed.





Set Automatic Updates

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  > **Settings > Auto-update apps**.
3. Tap an auto-update option, such as auto-update apps over Wi-Fi only.

Note: Automatic updates are unavailable for some apps.

Uninstall an App

You can uninstall any app that you have downloaded and installed from Google Play.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  > **My apps**.

3. On the **INSTALLED** tab, tap the app you want to uninstall, and then tap **UNINSTALL > OK**.

❖ The app is uninstalled and removed from your phone.

Get Help with Google Play

The Google Play store app offers an online help option if you have questions or want to know more about the app.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.

2. Tap  > **Help & Feedback**.

❖ The Web browser will take you to the Google Play Help Web page, where you will find comprehensive, categorized information about Google Play.

Lock and Unlock Your Screen

Your phone allows you to quickly turn the screen off when not in use and to turn it back on and unlock it when you need it.

Turn the Screen Off When Not in Use


- To quickly turn the screen off, press the Power/Lock button. Pressing the Power/Lock button again or receiving an incoming call will turn on your phone screen and show the lock screen.

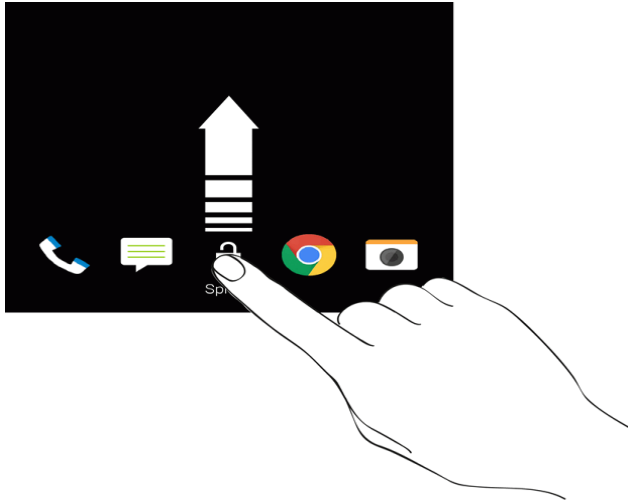
To save battery power, the phone automatically turns off the screen after a certain period of time when you leave it idle. You will still be able to receive messages and calls while the phone's screen is off.

Note: For information on how to adjust the time before the screen turns off, see [Display & Gestures Settings](#).

Unlock the Screen

Unlock the screen to receive an incoming call or to access your phone.

1. When the screen is off, press the Power/Lock button to show the lock screen.
2. You can either:
 - Drag the lock icon  up.



- Flick a shortcut icon up to directly launch the app.

Tip: If you've set an event reminder or an alarm, you can snooze or dismiss the event or alarm right from the lock screen. Just drag ⌚ or ✖ up.

Update Your Phone

From time to time, updates may become available for your phone. You can download and apply updates through the Settings > System updates menu.

⚠ Software Update Cautions

During update: The phone cannot be used until the software update is complete. It may take time to update your phone's software.

Signal during update: Update your phone where signal reception is good, and do not change location during the update process. Make sure the battery is adequately charged before beginning an update. A weak signal or low battery during an update may cause the update to fail. An update failure may disable the phone.

Other functions during update: Other phone functions cannot be used during a software update.

Update Your Phone Software

You can update your phone's software using the System updates option.





Before Updating Your Phone

Updating your phone may result in a loss of saved data depending on the condition of your phone (malfunctioning, damaged, water seepage, etc.). You must back up all critical information before updating your phone firmware.

Note: Updating your phone firmware may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.





Back Up All Data Prior to Update

To back up your Gmail information:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Accounts & sync.**
2. Do any of the following:
 - Turn on the **Autosync** option. When Auto-sync is on, Gmail email, Calendar, and Contacts automatically synchronize whenever a change is made.
 - Tap **Google**, select the Google Account you want to back up, and then select the items you want to synchronize. Tap  > **Sync now** to sync your Google Account information.

To back up your Google applications:

Applications you've purchased from Google Play are reloaded remotely and can be re-installed after the update is applied. After the update, make sure that you add your Google Account on the phone.




1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store.**
2. Tap  to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap **My apps**, swipe to the **ALL** tab, and then tap the app you want to restore.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

As an added precaution, to preserve any data on your microSD card, please unmount it from your phone prior to starting the update process.

- Tap  >  >  **Settings > Storage > Unmount SD card.**

Update the Operating System



This option allows you to update the phone's operating system (OS) via an over-the-air connection.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > System updates.**
2. Tap **HTC software update > CHECK NOW.**

Note: If you want to conserve data usage, you can select the **Update over Wi-Fi only** option before you tap **CHECK NOW.**




3. Follow onscreen instructions to download and install any available updates.
 - ❖ Your phone automatically downloads and installs any available updates. You may be required to power your phone off and back on to complete the software upgrade.

Confirm Your Current Phone Firmware

- Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **About** > **Software information**.
- ❖ The software version is displayed.

Update Your Profile




This option allows you to automatically update your online user profile information. If you choose to change your user name and select a new one online, you must then update the user name on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **System updates**.
 2. Tap **Update profile** and follow onscreen instructions.
- ❖ The phone will download and install the profile update and you will see a confirmation when complete.

Note: If your data services or account syncing ever seems to go out unexpectedly, use this feature to reconnect with the network.

Update Your PRL

This option allows you to automatically download and update the PRL (preferred roaming list).

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **System updates**.
 2. Tap **Update PRL** and follow onscreen instructions.
- ❖ The phone will download and install the PRL update and you will see a confirmation when complete.

Your Phone Interface

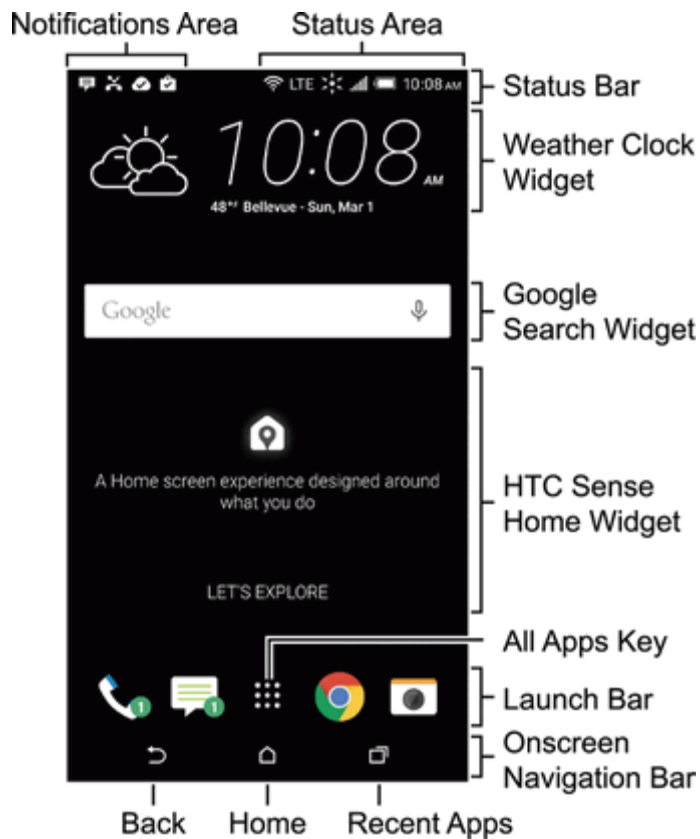
The following topics describe how to use and customize your phone's home screen, understand the status bar, and use the notifications window.

Home Screen Basics





The home screen is the starting point for your phone's applications, functions, and menus. You can customize your home screen by adding application icons, shortcuts, folders, widgets, and more.

Home Screen Layout

Your home screen extends beyond the initial screen. Swipe the screen left or right to display additional screens.




Item	Description
Status Bar	The status bar displays icons to notify you of your phone's status (on the right side) and notifications (on the left side).
NotificationsArea	The notification area of the status bar (on the left) displays notifications for incoming messages, missed calls, application updates, and more.



Item	Description
Status Area	The status area of the status bar (on the right) displays phone and service status information such as signal strength, battery status, Wi-Fi and data connectivity, ringer status, and time.
Widgets	Widgets are self-contained onscreen apps that reside on your phone's home screen.
Launch Bar	Primary shortcuts are application shortcuts that appear in the same location on all of your phone's home screens. These are customizable except for the All Apps Key, which remains static.
All Apps Key 	Tap to open the applications (apps) list. The apps list key is a primary shortcut available from all home screens.
BackKey 	Tap to open a context-specific options menu.
Home Key 	Tap to display the main home screen.
Recent AppsKey 	Tap to return to the previous screen.

Tip: Tap **Home**  to return to the main home screen from any other screen.

Extended Home Screens - Widget Panels

In addition to the main home screen, your phone features extended home screens to provide more space for adding icons, widgets, and more. Tap **Home**  to display the home screen and then drag across the screen to move from the home screen to another widget panel.

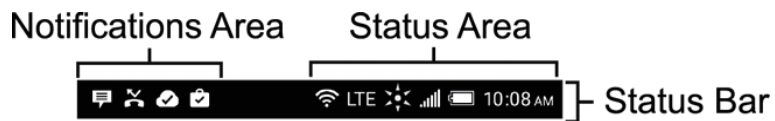
There are up to four widget panels available in addition to the home screen.

- If you are not already using the maximum number of panels for your phone, you can add more panels. Touch and hold an empty space in any widget panel, tap **Manage Home screen pages**, and then tap .
- While on any screen, tap **Home**  to return to the main home screen.
- When you swipe left or right from the home screen, the small circles above the launch bar let you know your current screen position.

Status Bar

The status bar at the top of the home screen provides phone and service status information on the right side and notification alerts on the left. To view the notifications window or access the quick settings menu, tap the status bar and drag it down.
















Status Bar Layout



Main Notification Icons

Icon	Notification
	Mobile Hotspot is on
	New text or MMS message
	New voicemail
	New Gmail message
	New email
	Event
	Music is playing
	Power saver mode is on
	General notification (for example, sync error)
	Wi-Fi is on and wireless networks are available
	More notifications available (tap to view)
	Missed call
	Call in progress
	Downloading
	Uploading
	Waiting to upload
	USB connection
	Update successful
	New Sprint Zone message

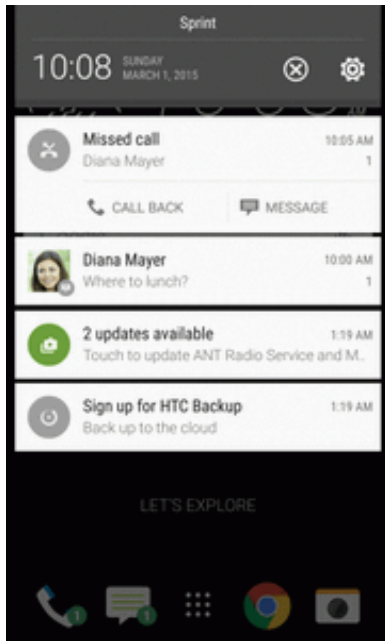
Main Status Icons

Icon	Status
	Bluetooth active
	GPS active
	Wi-Fi active
	NFC is on
	Vibrate
	Speakerphone active
	Network (full signal)
	Network (roaming)
	Sprint Spark enhanced 4G LTE data service
	3G (data service)
	Airplane mode
	Data synchronizing – connected to HTC Sync
	Alarm set
	Battery (charging)
	Battery (full charge)


Notifications Panel

When you see notification icons, open the Notifications panel to check out details of the notifications that you've received. You can also quickly access settings from the Notifications panel.

1. Slide down from the top of the screen to open the notifications panel.







2. On the Notifications panel:

- Some notifications allow you to take immediate action. For example, tap a missed call notification to return the call or reply with a text message.
- Tap the notification icon on the left to open the corresponding app.
- To dismiss just one notification in the list, drag it left or right. To dismiss all notifications and close the Notifications panel, tap .

Tip: If you have several notifications, scroll through the list screen to see them all.

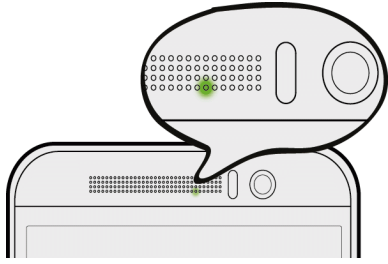
Manage App Notifications

You can set the priority of app notifications or completely block notifications for apps you don't want to be notified about.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Sound & notification**.
 2. Tap **App notifications**, and then tap the app you want manage. You can also touch and hold a notification, and then tap .
 3. Tap the **ON/OFF** switch next to **Block** or **Priority** depending on what you want to do.
- ❖ Settings for app notifications are applied to notifications in the Notifications panel and the lock screen.

Front Indicator Light (LED)

The Front Indicator Light (LED) provides phone information at a glance.



The indicator shows:

- Solid green light when your phone is connected to the power adapter or a computer and the battery is fully charged.
- Flashing green light when you have a pending notification (for example, a new message or a missed call).
- Solid orange light when the battery is being charged.
- Flashing orange light when the battery level reaches very low. (Power is below 14%.)

Change LED Notification Settings

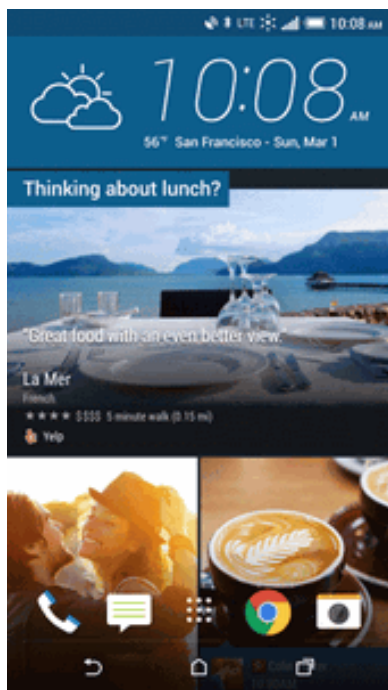
You can change when to flash and which apps will flash the LED when there are new notifications.



1. Tap > > **Settings** > **Sound & notification**.
2. Under Notification, tap **Flash notifications**. Choose whether to always flash the LED or flash it only when the screen is off.
3. Tap **App light notifications**. Choose which app notifications you want the LED to flash for.

Tip: In other apps, check their settings to find out if they have an option for flashing the LED.

HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen

Stay in touch with friends or get the latest about your interests right on HTC BlinkFeed. Set up which social networks, news sources, and other information will appear. To go to HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right from the Home screen.






- Swipe up or down to browse stories on HTC BlinkFeed.
- Tap a tile to view more details or to comment on a post or status update.
- While viewing a news article, swipe left or right to see more stories.
- While in HTC BlinkFeed, you can tap either  or  to scroll to the top.
- Scroll to the top and pull down on the screen to manually refresh the stream.
- Swipe right on HTC BlinkFeed to open the slideout menu to choose the type or add your custom topics to display.

Tip: You'll see the clock widget on HTC BlinkFeed if you've set HTC BlinkFeed as the main Home screen.

Turn HTC BlinkFeed On or Off

You can turn HTC BlinkFeed on or off.




1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Slide two fingers together, and then tap .
3. While HTC BlinkFeed is selected, tap **REMOVE**.
4. To add it back, swipe right, and then tap the  button that has **BLINKFEED**.

Add Content to HTC BlinkFeed

Personalize HTC BlinkFeed to show articles and status updates from your favorite news sources, categories, editions, and apps.

Select Feeds



Discover stories and articles on HTC BlinkFeed based on your interests, favorite categories, and popular news channels or websites.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap  > **Add content**.
4. Choose a category.
5. Select one or more feed sources. You can tap a name first to check out a particular feed, and then tap  to add it to HTC BlinkFeed.

Show Content From Your Apps and Social Networks



See your friends' posts in social networks or show content from your HTC apps right on HTC BlinkFeed.

Note: You need to sign in to your social networks to see their feeds on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap  > **Services & Apps**.
4. Select the apps and social networks you like.




Search and Add Topics of Interest

You can search for and select topics of interest to display them on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap **Search for content**, and then enter the topic you're looking for.
4. Tap a result, and then tap  to add it under Custom topics.


Subscribe to Multiple Regional Editions

By default, HTC BlinkFeed display feeds and information available for your current location. You can show one or more editions of your choice on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap  > **Add content**.
4. Tap , and then select a locale or region.
5. Select the feed sources to add.

Subscribe to RSS Feeds



Never miss out on news and updates from your favorite blog or website by adding custom RSS feeds right on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Open the Internet app and go to the RSS feed URL of the blog or website you want to subscribe to.
2. Tap  to add it to HTC BlinkFeed.
3. Enter the feed name and tap **Subscribe**.

Customize the Highlights Feed


Go to the Highlights feed to see a mix of top trending articles and status updates from the feed sources you added. You can also set the Highlights feed to only show items from your favorite news sources, categories, and apps.

Note: You cannot add custom topics and RSS to the Highlights feed.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap  > **Settings** > **Choose Highlights topics**.
4. Select the feed sources you want to appear in Highlights.

Save Articles for Later

You can bookmark articles to your reading list so you can read them later.



- Do one of the following:
 - While viewing an article, tap .

- On HTC BlinkFeed, touch and hold the tile of the article you want to bookmark, and then tap **Read later**.

You'll find the reading list in the slideout menu.




Post to Your Social Networks

You can easily post a status update from HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Tap  or swipe right to go to HTC BlinkFeed.
2. Swipe right to open the slideout menu.
3. Tap  > **Compose**, and then choose a social network.
4. Compose your status update and post it on your social network.

Remove Content From HTC BlinkFeed

Whether it's a tile or an entire feed, you can remove content you don't want to see on HTC BlinkFeed.

- To remove a tile, touch and hold the tile you want to remove, and then tap **Remove**.
- To remove a feed source, in the slideout menu, tap  > **Remove content**, select one or more items, and then tap **REMOVE**.
- To unsubscribe to a localized edition, in the slideout menu, tap  > **Remove content**. On the Remove content screen, tap  > **Remove editions**, select one or more items, and then tap **REMOVE**.

Customize the Home Screen

Learn how to set the wallpaper and add, move, or remove shortcuts, widgets, and folders from the home screen. Your phone allows you to change the wallpaper, add or remove widget panels, change your main Home screen, and add shortcuts, folders, and widgets at any time.

Change the Wallpaper

Choose from the available wallpapers, or use any photo you've taken with the camera.

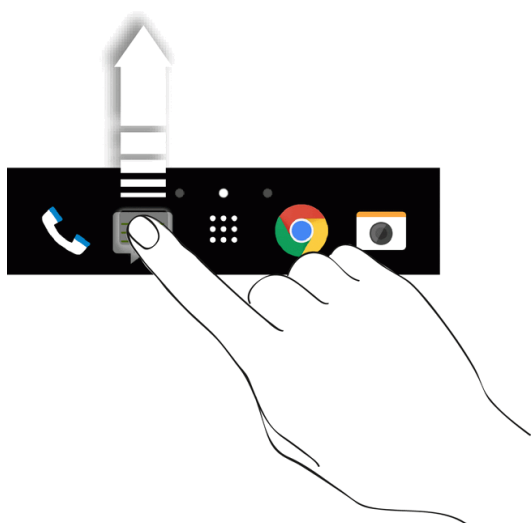
1. Tap and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Change Home screen wallpaper**.
3. Choose from where you want to select a wallpaper.
 - To use a wallpaper stored on your phone, tap **HTC wallpapers** or **Live wallpapers**.
 - Tap **Themes** to use a wallpaper stored in your Theme's gallery. See [Themes](#) for details.


- To use a photo you captured with the camera, tap **Gallery**, choose and crop a photo, and then tap **DONE**.
- Tap **ID wallpapers** to select a wallpaper from a downloaded Sprint ID pack.
- Tap **Photos** to select a wallpaper from photos stored in Google Photos app.

Customize the Launch Bar

The launch bar on your Home screen gives you one-tap access to commonly used apps and other shortcuts. You can replace the apps on the launch bar with other apps that you often use.

1. Touch and hold the app you want to replace, and then drag it out to .




2. Tap  to go to the Apps screen.
3. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it to the empty slot on the launch bar.


Tip: You can also group apps on the launch bar into a folder.

Tip: The apps or shortcuts you see on the lock screen are the same as the ones in the launch bar.

Change Your Main Home Screen

Set HTC BlinkFeed or a widget panel as your main Home screen.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Manage Home screen pages**.
3. Swipe left or right until you see the panel that you want to use as your main Home screen.
4. Tap **SET AS HOME**.
5. Tap .

Note: Tapping  from an app will first return you to the last panel you were in. Just tap  again to go to your main Home screen.



Organize Your Widget Panels

Organize your widget panels depending on your needs.

Add or Remove a Widget Panel


Note: You won't be able to add a new widget panel if you've already reached the maximum limit.

Note: If it's not removed, HTC BlinkFeed always appears as the first panel. A widget panel cannot be inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Manage Home screen pages**.
3. To add a new widget panel, swipe until you see the  icon, and then tap it.
4. To remove a widget panel, swipe left or right until you see the panel, and then tap **REMOVE**.
5. Tap .

Arrange Widget Panels

Note: A widget panel cannot be moved or inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.


1. On HTC BlinkFeed or any widget panel, slide two fingers together to customize the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold a widget panel thumbnail, and then drag it left or right to the position you want.
3. Tap .


Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts

Add widgets and app shortcuts to the Home screen.

Add Widgets on Your Home Screen

Widgets make at-a-glance important information and media content easily available. Choose from a selection of widgets and add the most useful ones to your Home screen.


1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Add apps and widgets**.
3. Tap  > **Widgets**.

4. Scroll through the widgets or tap  to search for specific widgets. Some widgets are available in different styles and sizes.
5. Touch and hold a widget, and then drag it to a widget panel you want to add it to.

You can also add widgets that allow you to quickly switch on or off certain settings such as Bluetooth and GPS.


Change the Widget Settings

You can modify basic settings of some widgets (for example, the Clock widget) from the Home screen. Some widgets can also be resized after you've added them to your Home screen.

- Touch and hold the widget on your Home screen, and then drag it to . You can then customize the widget settings.
- To resize the widget, touch and hold the widget. If a border appears around the widget, drag the sides of the border to enlarge or shrink the widget size.

Add Apps and Other Shortcuts on Your Home Screen

Place apps you often use on your Home screen. You can also add shortcuts to frequently used settings, bookmarked Web pages, and more.


1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, tap **Add apps and widgets**.
3. Tap ▼ > **Apps** or **Shortcuts**.
4. Scroll through the apps or shortcuts, or tap  to search for one.
5. Touch and hold an app or shortcut icon, and then drag it to a widget panel where you want to add it.

Note: To add an app from the Apps screen, touch and hold an app and drag it to a widget panel.

Move or Remove Items on Your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the widget or app shortcut you want to move or remove.
2. To move the item to another position on the same panel, just drag it to a new area and then release it.
3. To move the item to another Home screen panel, flick left or right to rotate the screen to another widget panel, and then release it.



4. To remove the item, drag it to , and when the item turns red, release it.

HTC Sense Home Widget

Get quick access to apps, shortcuts and folders you use most frequently based on where you are. With the HTC Sense Home widget, HTC One M9 continually adapts to how you use it. For example, apps you use most frequently for work will show up when you're at your office. The HTC Sense Home widget changes depending on whether you're at home, work, or somewhere else.

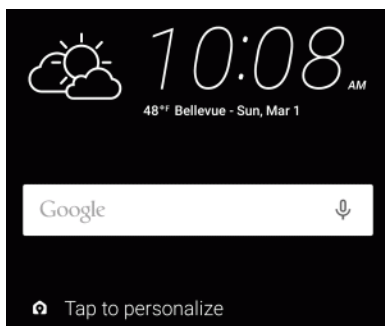
Set Up the HTC Sense Home Widget

Setting up the HTC Sense Home widget is quick and easy.

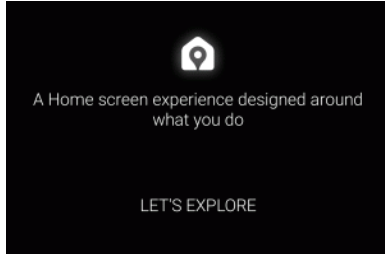
Tip: If you don't see the HTC Sense Home widget, add it to your Home screen. See [Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts](#).

Note: Make sure you turn on location services in your phone settings. See [Location Settings](#).

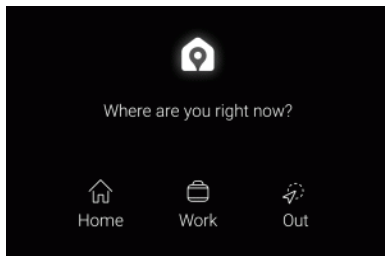
1. Tap **Tap to personalize**.



2. On the setup screen of the HTC Sense Home widget, tap **LET'S EXPLORE**.



3. Tap where you are to finish setting up the widget.



4. On the widget, tap > ✓ > ☰ > **Personalize HTC Sense Home**.
5. Select all the options on the screen, and then tap ↺.

Set Your Home and Work Locations

You can change the address for your home and work locations if you ever move to a new home or change your job.

1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
2. On the widget, tap > ✓ > ☰ > **Set locations**.
3. Tap the address area to search for the address you want to set.
4. When you've found the address on the map, tap **DONE**.

Switch Locations Manually


The HTC Sense Home widget automatically changes locations based on where you are. You can also manually change the location in the HTC Sense Home widget.

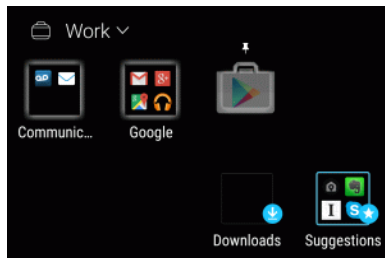
For the HTC Sense Home widget to change locations automatically, you need to make sure that HTC Location Service is turned on. See [HTC Location Service](#).

1. On your Home screen, slide right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
2. Tap ✓, and then tap the location you want.

Pin and Unpin Apps

Pinning apps, shortcuts, or folders to the HTC Sense Home widget ensures they stay on the widget. Items in the HTC Sense Home widget will have one of two states: pinned or unpinned. Unpinned items will be automatically changed to more frequently used items.



1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To pin an item, touch and hold it until you see .



- To unpin an item, touch and hold it until the unpinning progress bar has completed.



Add Apps to the HTC Sense Home Widget

Add your favorite apps, shortcuts, or folders to the HTC Sense Home widget.

1. Tap  > .
2. Touch and hold the app, shortcut, or folder you want to add to the widget.
3. Drag the item to where you want in the HTC Sense Home widget.
4. The app, shortcut or folder will be added to the HTC Sense Home widget and pinned in place.

Turn Smart Folders On and Off




Smart folders are folders in the HTC Sense Home widget that dynamically change contents depending on the apps you download and use. If you don't want to see recently downloaded or recommended apps, you can turn off the smart folders.

1. On the Home screen, swipe right or left until you see the HTC Sense Home widget.
2. Tap , and then tap  > **Show/hide smart folders**.
3. Select the smart folders you want to show or hide.
4. Tap **OK**.

Customize the Lock Screen




Use the home wallpaper, or use any photo you've taken with the camera as the lock screen wallpaper.

Change the Lock Screen Wallpaper

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Personalize**.
2. Tap **Change wallpaper** below LOCK SCREEN.
3. Tap any of the following options:
 - Tap **Use home screen wallpaper** or tap **Use custom wallpaper** to select a photo from Gallery.
 - Tap **Themes** to use a wallpaper stored in your Theme's gallery. See [Themes](#) for details.
 - Tap **Photos** to select a wallpaper from photos stored in Google Photos app.

Set a Screen Lock




Help protect your personal information and help prevent others from using HTC One M9 without your permission. Choose to set a screen lock pattern, numeric PIN, or other means of securing your phone. You'll be asked to unlock the screen every time HTC One M9 is turned on or when it's idle for a certain period of time.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Select a screen lock option and set up the screen lock.
4. Tap **Lock phone after** then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

You can also clear **Make pattern visible** or **Make passwords visible** if you don't want your screen lock to display as you enter it onscreen.

Set up Smart Lock

Set up your phone to detect your face or another trusted device before you can unlock the screen.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**, and then select and set up a screen lock.
 - ❖ This will be your backup screen lock method to use in case the phone doesn't recognize you or a trusted device.
3. On the Security screen, tap **Smart Lock**.
4. Confirm your screen lock.

5. Tap **Trusted face** and follow the onscreen instructions.
6. Tap **Lock phone after** then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

To help make Smart Lock more reliable and more secure, you can train HTC One M9 to recognize your face in different situations, such as when you're wearing glasses or sporting a beard.

- Tap **Smart Lock**, confirm your screen lock, and then tap **Trusted face > Improve face matching**. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Change Lock Screen Shortcuts

To change apps (or other shortcuts) on the lock screen, change the ones on the launch bar. To find out how, see [Customize the Launch Bar](#).

Turn Off the Lock Screen

You can turn the lock screen off in Settings.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock > No lock screen**.




To turn the lock screen on again, in Security settings, tap **Screen lock > Lock screen**.

Lock Screen Notifications

On the lock screen, you can see notifications such as missed calls, text messages, calendar events, and more.

Turn Lock Screen Notifications On or Off

You can choose to turn lock screen notifications on or off.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Sound & notification**.
2. Tap **When device is locked > Don't show notifications at all**.

If you change your mind later, you can tap **Show all notification content** to turn lock screen notifications on.

Interact with Lock Screen Notifications

Besides seeing notifications on the lock screen, you can also interact with them.

1. Tap twice on a notification to go directly to the related app.
2. To see the entire list of notifications on the lock screen, swipe down on the lock screen. You can tap on a blank area of the screen to return to the lock screen.
3. Swipe left or right on the notification to remove it.

4. Touch and hold a notification to see more related information.
5. Tap ⓘ to prioritize or block notifications from the related app.

HTC BlinkFeed Notifications

From time to time, you'll see HTC BlinkFeed notifications, such as a suggestion for a nearby restaurant or a recommended article.

1. Double-tap the notification to see the full notification. For restaurant recommendations, tap 📍 or the notification text.
2. Tap the notification again to get more information about the restaurant recommendation or to read the article in HTC BlinkFeed.

Tip: If you don't want to see restaurant recommendations on your lock screen, go to HTC BlinkFeed, and then tap ≡ > ⓘ > **Settings > Notification on lockscreen**. Then clear the **Meal time bundle** option.

Themes

Themes brings a quick and easy way for you to customize your phone with wallpapers, sounds, icons, and more. Log in with your HTC Account to browse from the available themes in the Themes store, or make your own.



Download Themes

Find and download pre-made themes that make it easy for you to personalize your phone.





1. Tap 🏠 > ⋮ > 🎨 **Themes**.
2. Tap **GET STARTED**.
3. Sign in with your preferred account.
4. On the Recommended screen, swipe left or right under each category to browse recommended items.

5. To see all available items for a category, swipe left and tap **See all**.
6. Tap an item to see the details screen.
7. Tap **Download**.

To apply the theme after it has finished downloading, tap **Apply**. If your theme has custom sounds, all of your ringtones and alert tones will also change.

Bookmark Themes





While browsing themes, you can bookmark them so you can easily find them later.

1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Browse the categories to find something you like.
3. Tap the item and then tap . You'll find the bookmark in **My themes**. See [Find Your Themes](#).

Tip: You can remove the bookmark by tapping  again.

Create Themes





You can create and customize your own theme and even share it for others to download.

1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Tap  > **Choose Home image** to set the main wallpaper for your theme.
3. Select an image from Gallery, Photos, or take a photo with Camera.
4. Crop the image when prompted, and then tap **DONE**.
5. Tap **NEXT**.
6. Swipe up or down to the pre-defined style to select for your theme.
7. If you don't want to customize your theme further, tap **NEXT** to save your theme.
8. Tap **EDIT**, then tap any of the categories you want to customize, and experiment with the settings until you're satisfied.
9. When you're ready, tap **PREVIEW** to see what your theme will look like.
10. Tap **FINISH**, then name your theme and tap **OK** to save your theme.

To apply the theme right away, make sure you select the **Apply this theme now** option.

Edit a Theme





After creating a theme, you can still edit it.

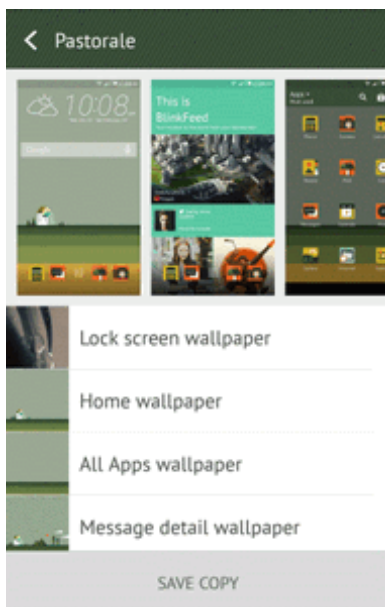
1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Tap  > **My themes** > **My current theme**.
3. Make the changes you want to the theme.
4. Tap **SAVE** to update the current theme.

Mix and Match Themes

After selecting a theme, you can mix and match parts from other themes such as sounds, icons, wallpapers, and more.

Note: To mix and match themes, you need to first download theme components from the catalog.


1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Tap  > **My themes** > **My current theme**.
3. Tap **Color** and select a color scheme.
4. Tap any of the other categories you want to change.
5. Tap an item in the category. If the category is empty, tap ▼ and choose one of the collections to select from.
6. Tap **Apply** to apply the change to your current theme.
7. Tap < until you see the mix and match screen. Continue making changes until you're satisfied with the result.



8. Tap **SAVE COPY** to save your new theme, or if you're editing a theme that you copied tap **SAVE** to save the changes.





Find Your Themes

Themes you created or downloaded can be found in your theme collection. You'll also find the theme you bookmarked.

1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Tap  > **My themes**.






Share Themes

Share themes, wallpapers, icons, and more with friends and family.

1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Browse to the theme you want to share and tap it to view the details.
3. While viewing the details page of any item in the catalog, tap  to share.

Delete a Theme

You can delete a theme if you no longer want to keep it on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Themes**.
2. Tap  > **My themes**.
3. Swipe to the **MY COLLECTION** tab.
4. Tap  > **Remove**.
5. Tap the themes you want to remove from your collection.
6. Tap **REMOVE**.

If the theme you deleted is currently applied, it will still be applied to your phone until another theme is applied.

Motion Launch

Motion Launch is a combination of a motion gesture followed by a finger gesture. With Motion Launch, you don't have to reach for the Power/Lock button to wake up your phone. Using a combination of simple gestures, you can wake up to your home screen, HTC BlinkFeed, and more.

- Wake up to the lock screen
- Wake up and unlock


- Wake up to the Home widget panel
- Wake up to HTC BlinkFeed
- Auto launch the camera with Motion Launch Snap
- Make a call with Quick call

Turn Motion Launch On or Off

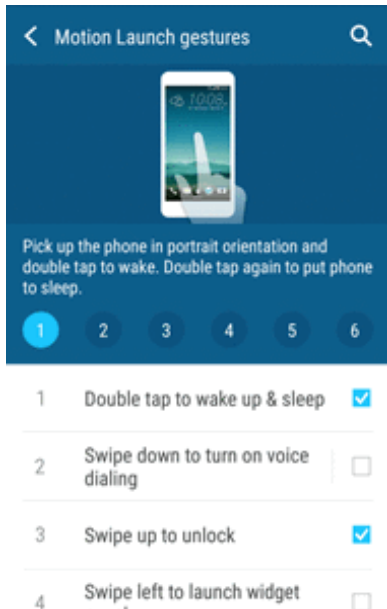
Motion Launch is on by default. You can turn it off in Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.



2. Tap  > **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Motion Launch gestures**.

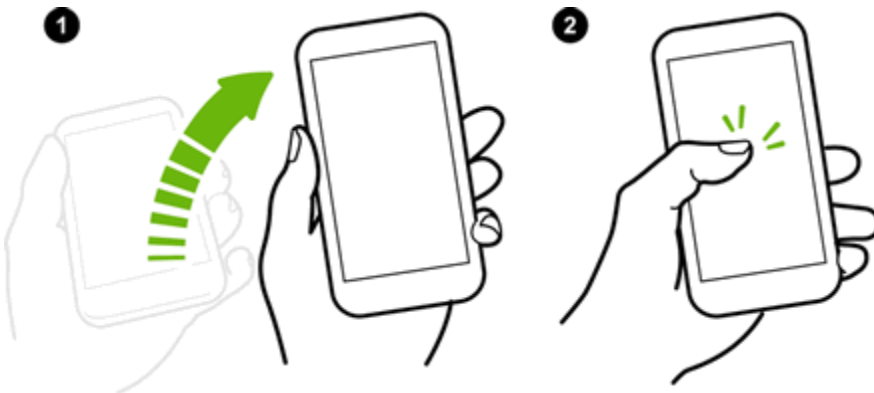
4. Select the Motion Launch gestures you want.



Wake Up to the Lock Screen

Go from sleep mode to the lock screen without reaching for the Power/Lock button.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Immediately double-tap the screen.



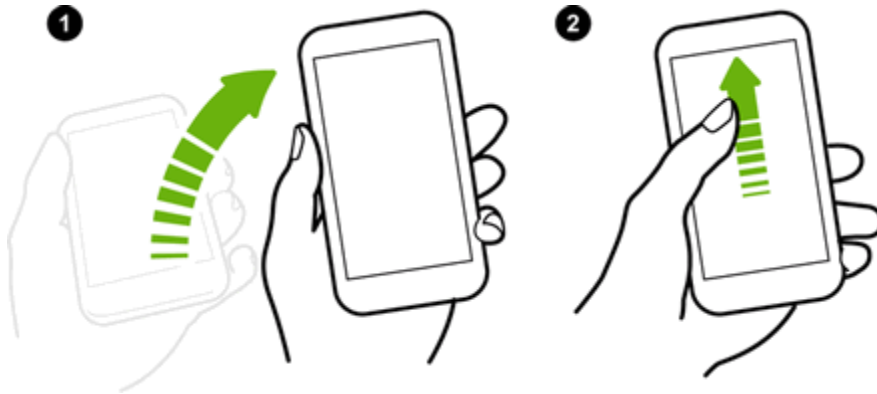
Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

Wake Up and Unlock

Go from sleep mode and unlock HTC One M9 to the last screen you were using without reaching for the Power/Lock button.

Note: If you've set up a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before HTC One M9 unlocks.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Immediately swipe up from the bottom half of the screen.



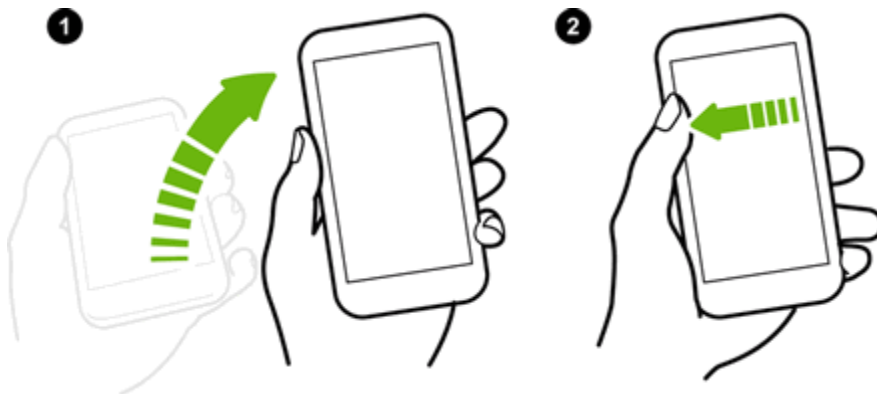
Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

Wake to the Home Widget Panel

Go from sleep mode to the Home widget panel without reaching for the Power/Lock button.

Note: If you've set up a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before HTC One M9 unlocks.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Immediately swipe left from the right side of the screen.



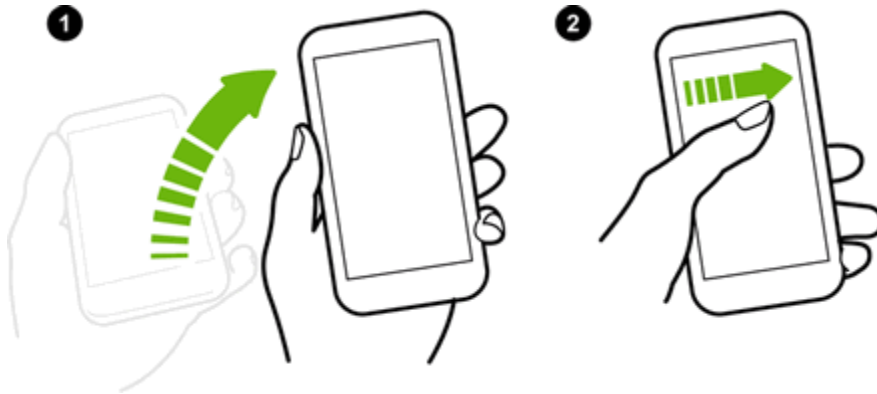
Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

Wake to HTC BlinkFeed

Go from sleep mode to HTC BlinkFeed without reaching for the Power/Lock button.

Note: If you've set up a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before HTC One M9 unlocks.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Immediately swipe right from the right side of the screen.



Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

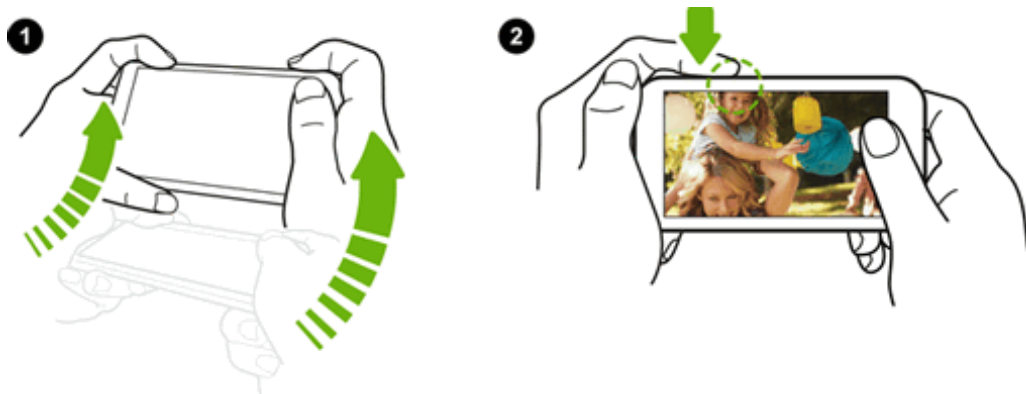
Auto Launch the Camera with Motion Launch Snap

When the screen is off, you can wake up the phone directly to the Camera app.

- Press and hold the **Volume Up** or **Volume Down** button, and then lift the phone in landscape orientation.

— or —

Lift the phone in landscape orientation, and then press the **Volume Up** or **Volume Down** button right away.



Note: If you've set up a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials when you exit the Camera app.

Make a Call with Quick Call

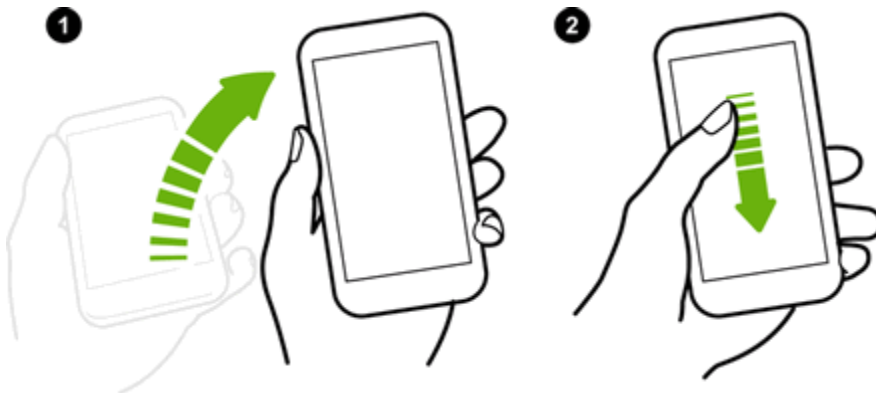
When the screen is off and your phone is in sleep mode, easily make a call by just swiping and using voice commands.

Note: This feature may not be available in all languages.

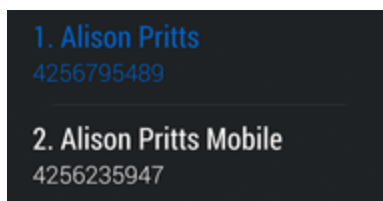
Note: Make sure **Motion Launch gestures** and **Quick call** are turned on in **Settings > Display & gestures > Motion Launch gestures**.

Note: If you've set a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before you can make the call.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Immediately swipe down from the top half of the screen.



3. When you see the microphone icon on the screen, hold the phone close to your face, and then say "Call" and the contact name. For example, say "Call Alison".
4. You can then do one of the following:
 - If there are several contacts with the same name, say the full name of the contact you want to call.
 - If a contact has several phone numbers, you'll see the following:



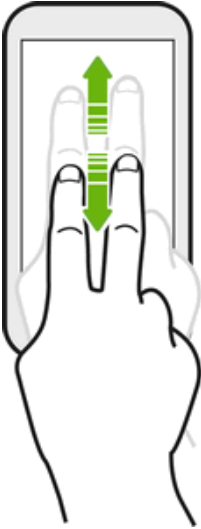
Just say the item number of the one you want to call. For example, say "2" to call the second one. Or say the full name and type of phone number as shown on the screen. For example, say "Alison Pritts Mobile".


- If you're asked to confirm, say "Yes" or "No". To cancel the call, say "Cancel".

Bypass the Screen Lock for Quick Call

If you've set a screen lock with credentials, you can set your phone to skip the security screen so you can immediately place calls with Quick call.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.



2. Tap  > **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Motion Launch gestures**.
4. Select the **Swipe down to turn on voice dialing**, and then select **Bypass security screen**.

Motion Launch Troubleshooting

In **Settings > Display & gestures**, tap **Motion Launch gestures** and make sure that the Motion Launch gestures you want to use are selected. If Motion Launch is already on but your phone is not responding to your gestures, see the possible causes below.

- There was no motion gesture before the finger gesture. Make sure to lift the phone first before doing the finger gesture.
- Length of swiping was too short. Swipe a longer distance across your screen.
- When swiping up to unlock the screen, you didn't swipe from the bottom half of the screen.
- You may have covered the proximity sensor while holding the phone.
- The duration of swiping may be too long. Release your finger when the phone vibrates.

Phone App

The following topics outline the use of your device's phone app to place and receive calls, use voicemail, set up and manage contacts, and more.

HD™ Voice

Your phone is also HD Voice enabled, which means you can enjoy unparalleled voice quality in areas with HD Voice service. Experience the crystal clear difference of HD Voice from Sprint on calls between Sprint customers each using an HD Voice enabled phone while in areas with available HD Voice service.



Note: HD Voice service is available in select markets. Visit sprint.com/coverage for more information.

Place and Answer Calls

The following topics describe how to directly dial calls, how to answer incoming calls, and how to use the in-call screen options.

Adjust In-Call Volume

- **Adjusting Call Volume:** Press the volume key up or down during the call.

Troubleshooting

Question: Difficulty during call.

Answer 1: It may not be possible to make a call properly in a noisy location.

Answer 2: When calling using Speaker, check the call volume. Raising the call volume may make calling difficult.

Question: Sound pops momentarily during a call.

Answer: Are you changing location while calling? Sound pops when signal is weak and the phone switches to a different area.

Emergency Call Cautions



Emergency calls are restricted in Airplane mode.

Call Using the Phone Dialer



The most “traditional” way to place a call is by using the phone’s dialer screen.

Call Using Smart Dial

You can either dial a number directly, or use Smart dial to quickly place a call. Smart dial searches and calls a stored/synced contact or a number from your call history.




1. Tap  >  to display the phone’s dialer screen.
2. Enter the phone number or first few letters of the contact’s name to see the top matching contact.
3. If there are a number of matches found (for example, 3 MATCHES), tap the number to see all the matches.



4. Tap the contact you want to call.
 - To check other phone numbers associated with the contact, tap  beside the contact name.
 - If the phone number has an extension, tap  after connecting to the main line and then dial the extension number.
5. To hang up, tap **END CALL**.

Change the Phone Dialer Layout

Switch between a large or standard dial keypad.

1. Tap  >  to display the phone's dialer screen.
2. Tap  > **Large dial pad** or **Standard dial pad**.

Troubleshooting



Question: Call does not connect.



Answer 1: Was the number dialed using the area code? Try dialing the number starting with "0."

Answer 2: Are you in an area with poor wireless coverage? Try calling again from another area.

Dial an Extension Number

To skip voice prompts when dialing an extension number, do one of the following.

- After dialing the main number, touch and hold  . The letter **p** is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then tap  . You will be connected to the mainline and then to the extension number.







— or —
- After dialing the main number, touch and hold  . The letter **w** is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then tap  . After connecting to the main line, tap **SEND** to dial the extension number.

Tip: You can save phone numbers with an extension in the People app.

Call Emergency Numbers

You can place calls to 9-1-1 even if the phone's screen is locked or your account is restricted.

Important: You won't be able to make an emergency call if you don't have a network signal.

1. Unlock the screen. For more information, see [Lock and Unlock Your Screen](#).
2. Tap  >  .
3. Tap     .

 As long as you are in an area covered by wireless service, the emergency call is placed.

Note: When your account is restricted or if you've enabled but forgotten your lock password or lock pattern, you can still make emergency calls by tapping **EMERGENCY CALL** on the screen.

Enhanced 9-1-1 (E 9-1-1) Information



This phone features an embedded Global Positioning System (GPS) chip necessary for utilizing E 9-1-1 emergency location services where available.

When you place an emergency 9-1-1 call, the GPS feature of your phone seeks information to calculate your approximate location. Depending on several variables, including availability and access to satellite signals, it may take up to 30 seconds or more to determine and report your approximate location.

Important: Always report your location to the 9-1-1 operator when placing an emergency call. Some designated emergency call takers, known as Public Safety Answering Points (PSAPs), may not be equipped to receive GPS location information from your phone.

Call Using a Speed Dial Number

Speed dial numbers let you dial numbers by touching and holding a single number on the Phone keypad.

1. Tap  >  to display the phone dialer's screen.
2. Touch and hold the speed dial key on the Phone keypad. The display confirms that you have dialed the number when it shows "DIALING" on the upper right side of the screen.

See [Set Up Speed Dial](#) for information on assigning speed dial numbers.

Call a Number in a Text Message, Email Message, or Calendar Event

While viewing a text message, email, or a Calendar event that has a phone number in it, you can just tap the phone number to place a call.





- For additional information, see [Text and Multimedia Messaging](#), [Email](#), and [Calendar](#).

Make International Calls

When placing international calls, plus code dialing automatically adds the international dialing code for your location (for example, 011 for international calls made from the U.S.).

Note: Make sure the **North American dialing** option is enabled under **Settings > Call > CDMA call settings > Plus code dialing**.

Note: To call someone in your contacts list, the stored phone number needs to have a "+" sign followed by the country code, area code, and phone number.

1. Tap  > .
2. Enter the first few letters of a contact name, and then tap a contact to call. If you don't have the number stored, touch and hold the  until a "+" sign appears. Then enter the country code, area code, and phone number, and tap .




- ❖ The Phone dialer automatically adds your international dialing code to the number.

Note: The Phone dialer dials as is and doesn't automatically add your international access code when you dial a phone number that has a "+1" in front or when there's no plus sign in front of the number.

Important: International calls may incur additional fees. Contact Sprint customer service for details.

Change the International Dialing Code





By default, the international dialing code is set to 011. When you're traveling in another country, you can set the international dialing code to your current location.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Call**.
2. Tap **CDMA call settings** > **Plus code dialing** > **International dialing**.
3. Enter the dialing code of the country where you're located, and then tap **OK**.

Set Up Speed Dial

Your phone can store up to eight phone numbers in speed dial locations. (The number 1 is reserved for Sprint voicemail access.)

To assign a speed dial number to a contact:

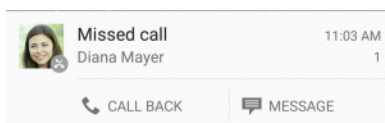
1. Tap  >  >  **People**, and then tap a contact.
2. Tap  > **Set speed dial**.
3. Tap **Not assigned** under Number to select the contact's number that you want to assign to the speed dial key.
4. Tap **Not assigned** under Location and then select a speed dial location.
5. Tap **SAVE**.

Note: If you assign a number to an already assigned speed dial location, the new phone number will automatically replace the previous speed dial assignment.

Return a Missed Call

You'll see this icon  in the status bar when you missed a call.

1. Slide the Notifications panel open to check who the caller is.
2. To return the call, spread your two fingers on the missed call notification to expand it, and then tap **CALL BACK**.



Tip: You can also tap the notification to display call history and then tap the entry to call it.

Tip: If you have multiple missed calls, tap the missed calls notification to open the **CALL HISTORY** tab.

Answer Phone Calls



The following information lets you know how to answer incoming calls, mute the ringer on incoming calls, reject incoming calls, and more.

When you receive a phone call from a contact, the Incoming call screen appears and displays the caller ID icon, name, and phone number of the calling party. When you receive a phone call from someone who is not stored in People, only the default caller ID icon and phone number appear on the Incoming call screen.

Note: Your phone will automatically adjust the ringtone volume when you use the polite ringer and pocket mode features.

Note: If your phone is turned off, all calls automatically go to voicemail.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call

- If the display is on when you get a call, tap **ANSWER** or **DECLINE**.
- If the display is locked when you get a call, drag  or  upwards.

You can also press the Power/Lock button twice to reject a call.

Tip: After declining a call, you can send a text message to the caller or create a task to remind you to return the call. All declined calls go to your voicemail.

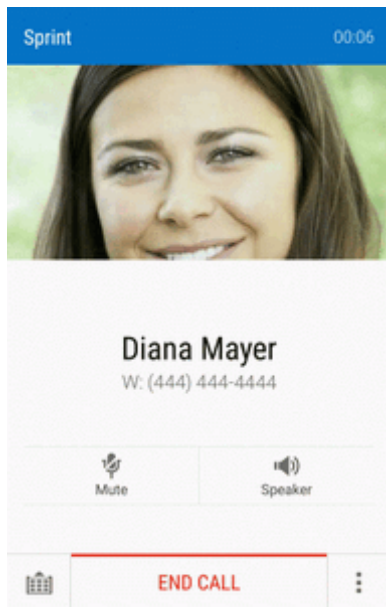
Mute the Ringing Sound without Rejecting the Call

- Press the **VolumeUp** or **VolumeDown** button.
- Briefly press the Power/Lock button.
- Place the phone face down on a level surface. (You can do this even on the lock screen.)

Note: If your phone is already facing down, it will still ring when there are subsequent incoming calls.


In-Call Screen Layout and Operations

While you're on a call, you will see a number of onscreen options.





- **Mute**  : Mute the microphone during an active call. Tap again to unmute the microphone.

Note: If Mute is activated, the speaker mode is deactivated.


- **Speaker**  : Route the phone's audio through the speaker (On) or through the earpiece (Off).
 - Activate **Speaker** to route the phone's audio through the speaker. (You can adjust the speaker volume using the **Volume** buttons.)
 - Deactivate **Speaker** to use the phone's earpiece.

Warning: Because of higher volume levels, do not place the phone near your ear during speakerphone use.

- **Dialpad**  : Use the onscreen dialpad to enter additional numbers, for example, an extension or access code.
 - For example: When you call your bank's 800 number, use your dialpad to enter your account number and PIN.
- Tap  to view more in-call options.
 - **Add call:** Tap to initiate a conference call (3-way call).
 - **Flash:** Tap to put the current call on hold.
 - **People** to display your contacts list.
 - **Open contact card** to display the caller's contact information.

End a Call

There are a couple of options for ending a phone call.

- On the call screen, tap **END CALL**.
- Slide the Notifications panel open, and then tap .



If the phone number of the person who called is not in your contacts list, you can choose to save the number to your contacts list after you hang up.

Place Calls from History/People

You can also place calls directly from your contacts list or from the Call history screen.

Call From Call History

You can directly call numbers stored in your Call history.



1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Tap an entry to place a call.

Note: You cannot make calls from Call history to entries identified as **No ID** or **Restricted**.

Tip: Touch and hold an entry in the Call history list to open the options menu where you can select to view the contact information (if number is stored in People), edit the number before you call, send a text message, or delete the entry from the Call history list and more.

Call From People

Call your contacts from the People application.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe left to display the **PEOPLE** tab.
3. Tap the contact you want to call to open the contact details screen.
4. Tap a phone number to place a call.

For additional information, see [Contacts](#).



Call History

Call history lists all recent incoming, outgoing, and missed calls. Call history makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your phone automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list.

Note: Call history records only calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while your phone is turned off, it will not be included in History.




Open Call History

Access your Call history to quickly call someone back or see who you have talked to recently.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
 - ❖ Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and the contact name (if the number is in People)
3. Do any of the following:
 - Tap a name or number in the list to call. See [Call From Call History](#).
 - Touch and hold a name or number in the list to display the options menu.
 - Tap a contact photo to find more ways of getting in touch with the contact.
 - Tap ▼ to display only a particular type of call such as missed calls or outgoing calls.

Save a Number From Call History




If the phone number of a person who called is not in People, you can choose to save the number after you hang up.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Tap  next to the new number and choose whether to create a new contact or save the number to an existing contact.

Note: You cannot save phone numbers already in People or from calls identified as **No ID** or **Restricted**.



Prepend a Number From Call History


If you need to make a call from the Call history and you are outside your local area code, you can add the appropriate prefix by prepending the number.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Touch and hold the entry you want to call and tap **Edit number before calling**.
4. Enter the prefix and tap  to call the number.

Block a Caller





When you block a phone number or a contact, all calls from the phone number or contact will be declined automatically.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Touch and hold the contact or phone number you want to block, and then tap **Block caller** > **OK**.

Note: To remove a caller from your blocked list, on the **CALL HISTORY** tab, tap  > **Blocked contacts**. Touch and hold a contact, and then tap **Unblock contacts**.

Erase Call History

If the Call history becomes long, you can delete an entry or the entire Call history list.

1. Tap  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Do either of the following:
 - To delete a Call history entry, touch and hold the entry, and then tap **Delete from call history**.
 - To erase the entire Call history list, tap  > **Remove call history**. Tap  > **Select all**, and then tap **DELETE**.

Video Chat


Don't just call. Be heard and seen using video call enhancements that work seamlessly with your video chat app.

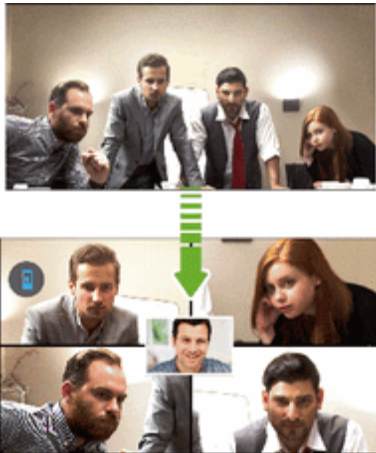
Face Tracking


While doing a video chat using a third-party video chat app, Face Tracking focuses on your face and others around you, and tracks faces that are within the camera's angle of view. Face Tracking can track a maximum of four (4) faces.

1. Open your video chat app, and then tap  to open the menu.






2. Tap  to turn on Face Tracking. As other people around you enter the front camera's field of vision, each person will appear in a window on the video chat screen. Your camera will zoom in or out to keep the faces in focus when you move.






3. Drag the mini-window anywhere you want.
4. Depending on the video chat app, you can single-tap or double-tap the mini-window to switch screens with the called participant.
5. Tap  again to turn off Face Tracking.

Share Your Phone Screen

Show off some pics or teach your friend how to use a phone feature. Screen Share allows you to show your phone screen to the person you're video chatting with. You need a third-party video chat app to use Screen Share.

1. On the video chat screen, tap  >  to activate Screen Share.
2. On your phone, go to the screen you want to share and then tap . You can go to any screen on your phone and the person you're chatting with will see it.
3. While sharing your screen, you can:

- Tap  to draw. Trace your finger across the screen to call out important parts.
- Tap  to pause screen sharing.
- Tap  to stop screen sharing.

Optional Services


The following topics outline additional voice-related services available with your phone, including voicemail, call services, and more.

Voicemail (Traditional)

In addition to Visual Voicemail, your phone and Sprint service always offer traditional voicemail service accessed through the Phone application.

Voicemail Notification




There are several ways your phone alerts you to a new message.

- By sounding the assigned ringer type.
- By displaying  in the Notifications area of the status bar when a single new unheard voicemail message is received.
- By flashing the front indicator light (LED), if enabled.

Note: Your phone accepts messages even when it is turned off. However, your phone notifies you of new messages only when it is turned on and you are in a Sprint service area.

Set Up Voicemail

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Sprint voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated. Always use a password to help protect against unauthorized access.





1. Tap  > .
2. Touch and hold  to dial your voicemail number.
3. Follow the system prompts to:
 - Create your password.
 - Record your name announcement.
 - Record your greeting.

Important: Voicemail Password – Sprint strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.

Retrieve Your Voicemail Messages



You can review your messages directly from your wireless phone (using either traditional voicemail or Visual Voicemail) or from any other touch-tone phone.

Use Traditional Voicemail to Access Your Messages

1. Tap  > .
2. Touch and hold   to dial your voicemail number.
3. Follow the voice prompts to listen to and manage your voicemail messages.

Use Another Phone to Access Your Messages

1. Dial your wireless phone number.
2. When your voicemail answers, press the pound key (#) on the phone.
3. Enter your password.

Tip: When you call voicemail from another phone, you first hear the header information (date, time, and sender information) for the message. To skip directly to the message, tap   during the header.

Note: Depending on your plan, you may be charged for airtime minutes when you are accessing your voicemail from your wireless phone.




Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail gives you a quick and easy way to access your voicemail. Now you can find exactly the message you are looking for without having to listen to every voicemail message first. This feature periodically goes out to your voicemail, and gathers the caller information from all of the current voicemails. It then populates a list with the caller name and number, along with the length of time and priority level of the voicemail message.

Set Up Visual Voicemail

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Sprint voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated.

Note: To set up your traditional voicemail box, see [Voicemail \(Traditional\)](#).

1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.
2. Tap **Personalize now** and follow the voice prompts to:

- Create a password (part of standard voicemail).
 - Record your name announcement.
 - Record your greeting.
3. When prompted to enter information, use the onscreen dialpad to enter your numeric responses.

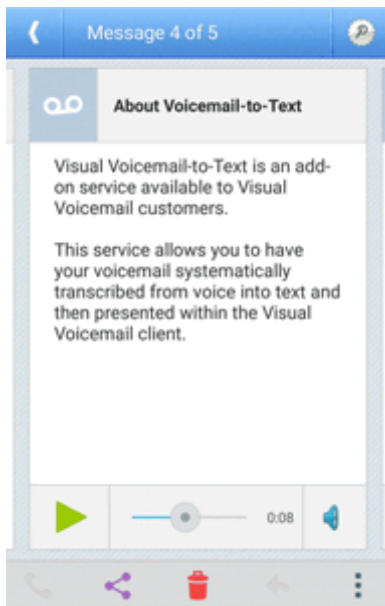
Important: Voicemail Password – Sprint strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.





4. Once you have completed the setup process, return to the voicemail page (see step 1).
5. Tap the **Welcome to Voicemail** message on the screen to play a brief explanation of the voicemail services.







Review Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail lets you easily access and select which messages you want to review.

1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.
2. Tap a message.



3. While reviewing a voicemail message, you can:
 - Tap  to play or  to pause the voicemail.
 - Tap  or  to turn the speakerphone on or off during playback. If the speakerphone feature was enabled in Settings, the speakerphone will always be automatically enabled during voicemail playback.

- Tap and drag the timeline to scrub through the message to different points.
- Tap  to call the person who left the voicemail message.
- Tap  to share the voicemail message.
- Tap  to delete the current voicemail message.
- Tap  to reply to the message. You can choose to reply via a text or audio message.
- Tap  > **Archive** to save the message.
- Tap  > **Help** to learn more about this application.










Note: Not all options are available for all messages.

4. Swipe your finger left or right to display the next or previous message. The next or previous message will begin playing automatically.

Tip: You can navigate through voicemail messages as frequently as you'd like. You can even move to the next or previous message before you're finished listening to the current one.

Visual Voicemail Options


Your visual voicemail options appear as icons at the bottom of the voicemail review screen.

1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.
2. Tap an option.
 -  **Record** to record a voicemail.
 -  **Subscribe to Premium** to subscribe to the premium Voice-to-Text transcription service. (Requires an additional monthly charge.)
 -  **Select** to choose the voicemail messages you want to play, delete, or save to the microSD card.
 -  **Play all** voicemail messages in your inbox.
 -  **Compose** a multimedia voicemail message.
 -  **Other options** to search, get help, or change the Visual Voicemail settings.

Configure Visual Voicemail Settings

The Visual Voicemail settings menu lets you access settings for notifications, pictures, greetings, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.




2. Tap  > **Settings**.

❖ You will see the voicemail settings menu.

3. Select an option to change its settings.

Change Your Main Greeting via the Voicemail Menu

Your main greeting can be changed directly via the Visual Voicemail system. This direct access saves you from having to navigate within the voicemail menu.


1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.

2. Tap  > **Settings** > **Preferences** > **Personalize voicemail**.

3. Tap **OK** to connect to the voicemail system. Follow the prompts to change your current greeting.

Edit the Display Name via the Voicemail Menu

From your Visual Voicemail menu, you can quickly change the name or number attached to your voice messages.

1. Tap  >  >  **Voicemail**.

2. Tap  > **Settings** > **Display** > **Display name**.

3. Tap the existing identification field and enter a new identifying name or number (used to identify you to recipients of your voice messages).


4. Tap **OK** to save your information.

Conference Calling

With conference calling, also known as 3-way calling, you can talk to two people at the same time. When using this feature, the normal airtime rates will be charged for each of the two calls.

1. Tap  > .

2. Dial a number and tap .

3. Once you have established the connection, tap  > **Add call**, and dial the second number. (This puts the first caller on hold and dials the second number.)

Tip: You can add a call even if the first call was an incoming call.






4. When you're connected to the second party, tap .

If one of the people you called hangs up during your call, you and the remaining caller stay connected. If you initiated the call and are the first to hang up, all callers are disconnected.

- To end the three-way call, tap **END CALL**.

Caller ID Blocking

Caller ID identifies a caller before you answer the phone by displaying the number of the incoming call. If you do not want your number displayed when you make a call, follow these steps.

1. Tap  > .
2. Tap   .
3. Enter a phone number.
4. Tap **CALL**.

To permanently block your number, call Sprint Customer Service.

Call Waiting




When you're on a call, Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls by sounding two beeps. Your phone's screen informs you that another call is coming in and displays the caller's phone number (if it is available and you are in digital mode).

To respond to an incoming call while you're on a call:

- Tap  > **Flash**. (This puts the first caller on hold and answers the second call.)

To switch back to the first caller:

- Tap  > **Flash** again.







Note: For those calls where you don't want to be interrupted, you can temporarily disable Call Waiting by tapping    before placing your call. Call Waiting is automatically reactivated once you end the call.

Call Forwarding








Call Forwarding lets you forward all your incoming calls to another phone number – even when your phone is turned off. You can continue to make calls from your phone when you have activated Call Forwarding.

Note: Depending on your plan, you may be charged a higher rate for calls you have forwarded.

To activate Call Forwarding:

1. Tap  > .
 2. Tap   .
 3. Enter the area code and phone number to which you want your calls forwarded.
 4. Tap . (You will hear a tone to confirm the activation of Call Forwarding.)
- ❖ You will hear a tone to confirm the activation of Call Forwarding. All calls to your wireless number will be forwarded to the designated phone number.

To deactivate Call Forwarding:

1. Tap  > .
 2. Tap    .
 3. Tap . (You will see a message and hear a tone to confirm the deactivation.)
- ❖ You will hear a tone to confirm the deactivation.





Internet Calls

When you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, you can make and receive calls through an Internet calling account.

Note: Before you add an Internet calling account, make sure that you've registered with an Internet calling service that supports voice calls over Session Initiation Protocol (SIP). Internet calls to phone numbers may incur additional fees.

Add an Internet Calling Account

You must add an Internet calling account before you can make Internet calls.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Call**.
2. Under Internet call settings, tap **Accounts**.
3. Tap **ADD ACCOUNT**.
4. Enter your account details.
5. Tap  > **Save**.
6. To set your phone to receive Internet calls on your added account, select the **Receive incoming calls** option.

Make an Internet Call

Make an Internet call to either your contact's Internet calling account or phone number.

- **Internet calling account**

- In People, tap a contact who has an Internet calling account, and then tap **Internet call**.
- In Call History, tap an Internet call log.

- **Phone number**. First, enable Internet calling for your outgoing calls. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Call**. Tap **Use Internet calling**, and then select either **For all calls when data network is available**, **Only for Internet calls**, or **Ask for each call**.



Wi-Fi Calling

Wi-Fi calling gives you the ability to make and receive phone calls and send and receive text messages over a wireless network. Because Wi-Fi Calling uses a wireless connection, your calls, texts, and data activity won't count against your limits on your Sprint plan. Wi-Fi Calling also enhances coverage in areas where a phone signal is weak.

Warning: 9-1-1 Emergency Calling using Wi-Fi Calling

Because Sprint Wi-Fi Calling is a Voice over IP service that sends calls over the Internet, it's important to note that 9-1-1 works differently than a regular 9-1-1 call on the Sprint Network.




When you make a 9-1-1 call with a Sprint Wi-Fi Calling-enabled phone, your phone will first attempt to complete your call like any other 9-1-1 call on the Sprint Network. If wireless coverage is not available, your phone will try to complete a 9-1-1 call over Wi-Fi. Because of this, it's important to always make sure you have an accurate address registered to each Wi-Fi access point you use for Sprint Wi-Fi Calling.

If you would like to order a reminder sticker for your phone that explains how the 9-1-1 process works with Sprint Wi-Fi Calling, please contact Care by dialing   2 ^{ABC} from your Sprint phone or **844-665-6327**.




Set Up and Enable Wi-Fi Calling

Before you can use Wi-Fi Calling, you need to set it up.

Set Up the Phone for Wi-Fi Calling

- You need to enable location services before you can use Wi-Fi Calling. See [Location Settings](#) for details.
 - Make sure the phone is connected to a wireless network. See [Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network](#) for details.
1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
 2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Calling** ON/OFF switch and then tap **PROCEED** in the dialog box.
 - ❖ Wi-Fi Calling is added to your plan and the phone restarts.



Enable Wi-Fi Calling

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Calling** ON/OFF switch and then tap **PROCEED** in the dialog box.
3. Read the 9-1-1 Wi-Fi Calling information, and then enter your address to register for 9-1-1 emergency calling. Tap **OK**.

❖ You can now make and receive phone calls and send and receive text messages over Wi-Fi.




Make a Call Using Wi-Fi Calling

Call your contacts using Wi-Fi Calling.

1. Tap  > .
2. Enter the phone number of the contact, and then tap **CALL (Wi-Fi)**.
3. To hang up, tap **END CALL (Wi-Fi)**.

Turn Off Wi-Fi Calling

Turn Wi-Fi Calling off when you don't need it.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Calling** ON/OFF switch.

Call Settings

Your phone's Call settings menu lets you configure your voicemail options and a number of accessibility options such as hearing-aid amplification and teletypewriter.

Call Settings Options


- See [Call Settings](#) for details.

Change Ringtone Settings

You can change how your phone alerts you when you receive calls.


Switch Between Silent, Vibrate, and Normal Modes

- To change from silent to normal mode, press the **Volume Up** button.
- To change from vibrate to normal mode, press the **Volume Up** button twice.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Sound & notification** > **Sound profile**.


Lower the Ring Volume Automatically

Your phone has a quiet ring feature that automatically lowers the ring volume when you move it.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Sound & notification**.
2. Select the **Quiet ring on pickup** option.

Make Your Phone Ring Louder in Your Pocket or Bag

To help avoid missing incoming calls when your phone is in your pocket or bag, the pocket mode feature gradually increases the ring volume and vibrates when you receive a call.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Sound & notification**.
2. Select the **Pocket mode** option.

Contacts

The Contacts application lets you store and manage contacts from a variety of sources, including contacts you enter and save directly in your phone as well as contacts synchronized with your Google Account, your PC, compatible email programs (including Exchange Server), and your Facebook friends.

Contacts Cautions

Information saved in Contacts may be lost or changed if the battery is removed for a long period or left uncharged. Accident or malfunction may also cause loss or change to information. It is recommended that you keep a separate copy of contacts and other important information. The company is not responsible for any damages from lost or changed contacts.

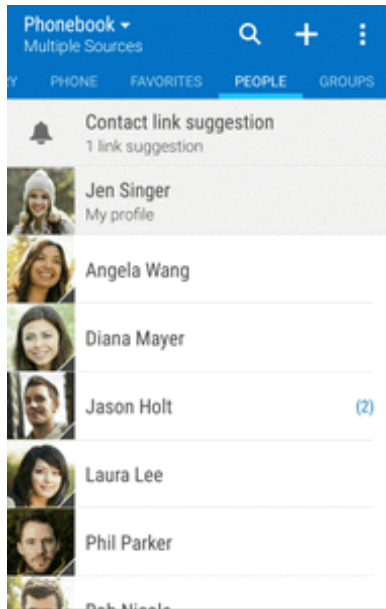
Your People List

The People app lists all contacts stored on your phone and from the online accounts you're logged in to.

Contacts Screen Layout

- Tap  >  >  **People**.

❖ The following illustration show's your Contacts app layout and describes the various features.







Item	Description
GROUPS tab	Show contact groups.
FAVORITES tab	Show all contacts.
PEOPLE tab	Show favorite contacts.
Contact name	Tap to show contact's details. This also shows when a contact has sent you new messages.
Contact image	Tap to find ways to quickly connect with the contact.
Contact link suggestion	Tap to manage contacts from your social network and Web-based email accounts.
My profile	View your profile and edit your contact information.
Menu	Tap to manage your contacts list.
Search	Search contacts.
Add new	Add a new contact.

Tip: You can also access People through the Phone app. Tap > and then swipe left until you reach the **PEOPLE** tab.

Tip: To sort your contacts by their first or last name, tap > **Settings** > **Sort contacts by**.






Filter Your Contacts List


When your contacts list gets long, you can choose which contact accounts to show.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  on the top bar.
3. Select the online accounts that contain the contacts you want to display.
4. Tap .

Find People





Search for contacts stored on your phone, your company directory if you have an Exchange ActiveSync account, or social networks you've signed into.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, you can:
 - Find people in your contacts list. Tap , and then enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box.
 - Find people on your company directory. Tap , enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box, and then tap **Search contacts in your Company Directory**.

Tip: Aside from searching for a contact by name, you can search using a contact's email address or company name. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  > **Settings** > **Search contacts by**, and then choose a search criteria.

Set Up Your Profile






Your profile stores your personal contact information in an easy-to-access location.

1. Tap  >  >  **People** > **My profile**.
2. Tap **Edit my contact card**.
3. Enter or edit your name and contact details.
4. Tap your current profile photo or icon to change it.
5. Tap .

Aside from your contact details, your profile also shows updates you've posted on your social networks.

Emergency Information

To make it easier for emergency personnel to identify important contacts and personal information, you can select your emergency contacts and enter your emergency information right in your profile. These information will show on the emergency calling screen.





1. Tap  >  >  **People** > **My profile**.
2. Tap **In case of emergency** under the Information section.
3. Tap **Choose your emergency contacts**.
 - ❖ You will be redirected to your Emergency contacts group.
4. Add contacts to your Emergency contacts group, and then tap .
5. Tap **Information goes here**, and then enter your emergency information.
6. Tap .

Add Entries to the People App


You can add new contacts to the People app or add existing ones from your social network or Exchange ActiveSync accounts.

Add a New People Entry

Start adding your contacts on your phone. If you've set up an email account on your phone, you can sync your new contacts with that account.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap .
3. Tap the **Name** field, and then enter the contact name.

Note: Tap  to separately enter the contact's given, middle, and family, and name suffix (such as Jr.).

4. Select the Contact type. This determines which account the contact will sync with.
5. Enter the contact information in the fields provided.
6. Tap .

When you tap the added contact on your contacts list, you'll see the contact information and your exchange of messages and calls. Depending on the information that you've added to the contact (such as an email address), you'll also be able to see the contact's social network updates, events, and photos.

Add an Extension Number to a Contact Number




While creating a new contact in People, you can add an extension number to their number so you can skip the voice prompts when calling.

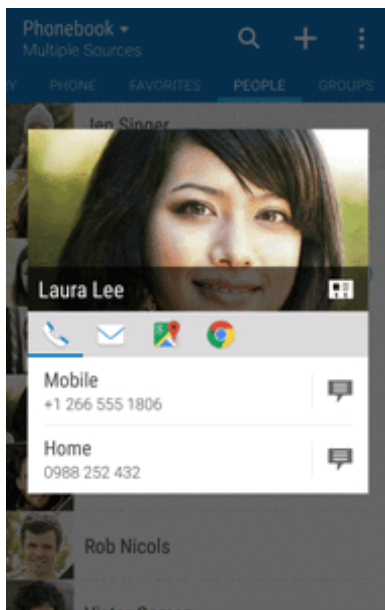
1. After entering the number of the main line, do one of the following:

- Tap **P(.)** to insert a pause before the extension number is dialed automatically. To make the pause longer, tap **P(,)** again.
 - Tap **W(:)** to be prompted to confirm the extension number.
2. Enter the extension number.
 3. Tap ✓.

Get in Touch with a Contact

Choose the best way to connect with your contacts.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap a contact's photo (not the name), and then choose how you want to get in touch with that contact.



Tip: For more ways of getting in touch with your contact, tap an icon below the contact photo.





Manage People Entries

Make sure your contacts' information are up to date. You can edit or delete an entry in People.

Edit a People Entry




You can add another phone number, email address, or assign a photo to a contact in People.

Note: Facebook and Twitter contacts cannot be edited.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Edit contact**.
3. Enter the new information.
4. Tap .





Delete an Entry

Follow these steps to delete an entry in your contacts list.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Delete contact**.
3. Tap **OK** to confirm.

Delete Multiple Entries






Clean up your contacts list by deleting entries that you no longer need.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  > **Delete contacts**.
3. Select the entries you want to delete, and then tap **DELETE**.





Import or Copy Contacts

It's easy to import or copy contacts from your online accounts and save them directly to your phone.

Import a Contact from an Exchange ActiveSync Account

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  and enter the contact's name or email address in the search box.
3. Tap **Search contacts in your Company Directory**.
4. Tap the name of the contact you want copied to your phone.
5. Tap  to save the contact to your phone.

Copy Contacts from One Account to Another

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  > **Manage contacts**.

3. Tap **Copy contacts**, and then choose a contact type or online account to copy from.
4. Select a contact type or account you want to save to.






Note: Contacts from your social network accounts may not be copied.

Merge Entries in People

If you have the same contacts on your phone, Google Account, and social network accounts such as Facebook and Twitter, your phone will try to combine them automatically or let you decide which contacts to combine. Combining the same contacts avoids duplicated entries in your contacts list.

Accept Contact Link Suggestions






When your phone finds contacts that can be merged, you'll see a link notification when you open the People app.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the **Contact link suggestion** notification when available. You'll see a list of suggested contacts to merge.
3. Navigate to the contact you want to merge.
4. Tap  to merge. Otherwise, tap  to ignore the contact link suggestion.

Note: If you don't want to receive contact link suggestions, on the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  > **Settings**. Clear the **Suggest contact link** option.






Manually Merge Entries

You can merge your entries manually and choose the accounts to link the contact.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) you want to link.
3. Tap  > **Link**.
4. You can:
 - Under Suggest links, tap  to link the contact to an account.
 - Under Add contact, tap one of the options to link to another contact.
5. Tap **DONE** to save the change.




Break the Link

When contact information has changed, you can choose to break the contact's link from another account





1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) whose link you want to break.
3. Tap  > **Link**.
4. Under the Linked contacts section, tap  beside an account to break the link.
5. Tap **DONE** to save the change.

Send Contact Information

Quickly share your contact card or People entries on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Do any of the following:
 - To send someone's contact information, touch and hold the name of the contact (not the icon or photo), and then tap **Send contact as vCard**.
 - To send your contact information, touch and hold **My profile**, and then tap **Send my profile**.
3. Tap **Send contact via** and choose how you want to send the vCard.
4. Select the type of information you want to send.
5. Tap **SEND**.

Send Multiple People Entries

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap  > **Send contacts**.
3. Select the contacts whose contact information you want to share.
4. Choose how you want to send the contact cards.
5. Follow screen instructions to proceed.

Share All Visible Contacts

You can share all entries that appear in your contacts list, regardless of the online account that your contacts sync with.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap  > **Manage contacts** > **Import/Export contacts** > **Share visible contacts**.

3. Choose how you want to send your contacts.






Contact Groups

Organize your friends, family, and colleagues into groups so you can quickly send a message or email to everyone in the group. We've also set up the Frequent group to automatically add the contacts you dial or get calls from the most.

Your phone also syncs with groups you've created in your Google Account.




Create a Group

Create a group for your sporting buddies or family members so you can easily send them a message or email.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, tap .
3. Enter a name for the group.
4. Tap  > **Add contact to group**.
5. Select the contacts you want to add, and then tap **SAVE**.




Send a Message or Email to a Group



Easily send a message or email to all members of the group.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, tap the group you want to send a message or email to.
3. Go to the **GROUP ACTION** tab.
4. Choose if you want to send a text message or email.
5. Follow the prompts to complete and send the group message or group mail. See [Send a Text Message \(SMS\)](#), [Create and Send a Gmail Message](#), or [Send an Email Message](#).

Edit a Contact Group

You have full control of your groups. Change the group name or add and remove group members from the People app.






1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch and hold the group, and then tap **Edit group**.
3. You can:

- Tap the group name to change the name. You can only change the name for groups that you have created.
- Tap  > **Add contact to group** to add more members.
- To rearrange the group members, drag  at the end of the contact's name to its new position.
- Select the check box next to any contacts you want to remove from the group.

4. Tap **SAVE**.

Manage Your Contact Groups





Put your favorite group at the top of the groups' list or delete groups that you don't need.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, tap  > **Edit groups**.
3. You can:
 - Rearrange the contact groups. Drag  at the end of the group name to its new position.
 - Select the contact groups you want to remove.
4. Tap **SAVE**.

Back Up and Restore Your Contacts





Make sure you don't lose your contacts by backing them up to your phone's storage or microSD card (if you inserted one).

Back Up Contacts

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap  > **Manage contacts**.
3. Tap **Import/Export contacts** > **Export to phone storage** or **Export to SD card**.
4. Select an account or type of contacts to export.
5. To help protect your data, tap **Yes**, and then set a password for this backup. Be sure to remember this password. You'll need to enter it again when importing contacts. If you don't need a password, tap **No**.
6. Tap **OK**.

Restore Contacts





Note: You can only restore contacts that were backed up using the **Export to phone storage** feature.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap  > **Manage contacts**.
3. Tap **Import/Export contacts** > **Import from phone storage** or **Import from SD card**.
4. If you have more than one account set up, tap the type for the imported contacts.
5. If you have multiple backups available, select the backup you want to import, and then tap **OK**.
6. Enter the password you've set for this backup, and then tap **OK**.






Private Contacts

If you don't want to show a contact's name and photo on the lock screen when you have an incoming call, add the contact to your private contacts list.

Add a Contact to the Private Contacts List

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Touch and hold the contact, and then tap **Add to private contacts**.
3. To view your private contacts list, on the **People** tab, tap  > **Manage contacts** > **Private contacts**.

Organize Your Private Contacts

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, tap  > **Manage contacts** > **Private contacts**.
3. To add contacts to the private contacts list, tap  , select the contacts you want to add, and then tap **SAVE**.

To remove private contacts from the list, tap  > **Remove private contact**, select the contacts you want to remove, and then tap **REMOVE**.

Messaging and Internet

With wireless service and your phone's messaging and data capabilities, you have the opportunity to share information through many different channels and accounts, including Gmail (Google), personal and corporate email, text and multimedia messaging, social networking accounts, and Hangouts.

Text and Multimedia Messaging




With Text Messaging (SMS), you can send and receive instant text messages between your wireless phone and another messaging-ready phone.

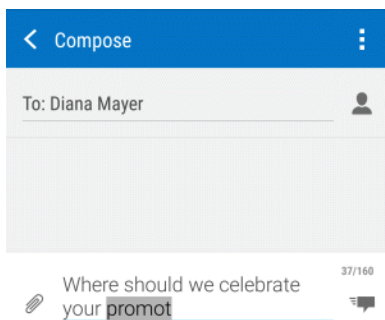
Multimedia messages, or MMS, can contain text and pictures, recorded voice, audio or video files, picture slideshows, contact cards (vCard), or appointments (vCalendar).


See your service plan for applicable charges for messaging.

Send a Text Message (SMS)

Quickly compose and send text messages on your phone.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a contact name or mobile number in the To field.
4. Tap the "Add text" box and then start composing your message.






Note: A counter appears above the Send icon  to tell you how many characters you have entered and how many characters are left. Once you go over the 160-character limit, a new message is created but automatically joined into one when received.



5. Tap  to send, or tap  to save the message as a draft.



Note: Your text message automatically becomes a multimedia message if you enter an email address as the recipient, add a message subject, attach an item, or compose a very long message.

Send a Multimedia Message (MMS)




When you need to add a little more to a text message, you can send a multimedia message (MMS) with pictures, voice recordings, audio or video files, contact cards (vCard), or appointments (vCalendar).

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. Tap .
3. Enter a contact name, mobile number, or email address in the To field.

Tip: If only phone numbers are showing up when you're entering a contact name, tap , and then tap  > **Show Email**.

4. To add a subject line, tap  > **Add subject** to add a subject line to your message.
5. Tap the "Add text" box, and then start composing your message.
6. Tap  and then select an attachment type.




Tip: Record videos with minimum resolution so you can reduce the file size of your attachments. For details, see [Camera Settings](#).



7. Select or browse for the attachment to attach.
8. After adding an attachment, tap  to see options for replacing, viewing or removing your attachment.
9. Tap  to send, or tap  to save the message as a draft.

Note: Depending on the resolution of your photo or video attachments, they may be displayed as cropped thumbnails in your multimedia message.

Create a Slideshow

You can create an MMS message with multiple slides, each containing a photo, video, or audio, and text.

1. After you've added either a photo, video, or audio in the multimedia message you're composing, tap  > **Slide**.
2. Choose where you want to insert the next slide.
3. Right after adding a slide, do one of the following:
 - Tap , and then choose to add a photo or a video.
 - Tap  > **Audio** to add music or a voice recording to a slide.







- Tap **Add text**, and then enter your caption.
 - Tap **...** to see options for replacing, viewing, or removing your attachment.
4. Tap **Preview**. Tap once on the preview screen to see playback controls.
 5. When finished, tap  to send, or tap  to save the message as a draft.

Send a Group Message

Group messaging makes it easy to send a message to multiple contacts all at once. You can choose to send a group SMS or group MMS.

Note: You will be charged for each text message sent. For example, if you send a message to a group of five people, you will be charged for five messages.

Note: Group MMS may incur extra data fees.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. Tap **+**.
3. Tap , select multiple recipients, and then tap **DONE**. You can also swipe to the **GROUP** tab and select a contact group.
4. To send a group SMS, tap  and select the **Send as individual** option. Clear this option to send your message as a group MMS.
 - **Group SMS.** Your message will be sent to the recipients as a text message and each message sent will be charged to your allocated text message plan. Replies of your recipients are sorted separately.
 - **Group MMS.** Similar to a group chat, sending a group MMS lets your recipients join the conversation you've started. Your phone also organizes message replies in a single conversation thread. If this is your first time to send a group MMS, you may need to enter your mobile phone number.
5. Tap the "Add text" box, and then start composing your message.
6. Tap  to send, or tap  to save the message as a draft.

Group MMS FAQs


Question: Why can't my recipients see or join the group MMS I sent them?




Answer: Check whether your recipients have enabled Group messaging on their mobile devices. Some devices or mobile operators may not support this feature.

Question: How do I receive or block group MMS?

Answer: In Message settings, tap **Multimedia messages (MMS)**, and then turn **Group Messaging** on or off.


Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message






While composing a text or multimedia message, tap  to automatically save your message as a draft. You can resume composing a draft message.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. Tap the draft message, edit the message, and then tap .

Tip: To see all draft messages in one place, tap  on the All messages screen, and then tap **Filter > Drafts**.





Read and Reply to a Message

Depending on your notification settings, the phone plays a ringtone, vibrates, or displays the message briefly in the status bar when you receive a new text or multimedia message. To change the notification for new text and multimedia messages, see [Text and Multimedia Message Options](#). A new message icon () also appears in the status bar.



1. To open and read the message, you can:
 - Open the Notifications panel, and then tap the new message.
 - Tap  >  **Messages**, and then tap the message.
2. While reading the message, you can:
 - **Reply with a text message.** Tap the "Add text" box, enter your reply message, and then tap .
 - **Reply with a multimedia message.** Tap the "Add text" box, enter your reply message, tap  to choose an attachment for your message, and then tap .
 - **Call or save a phone number contained in the message.** Tap the phone number, and then choose whether to dial the number or add it to your contacts.
 - **Open a link in the message.** Tap the link to open it in the Web browser.
 - **Send to or share an email address contained in the message.** Tap the email address to send an email. You'll be asked to choose which email app to use. To share the email address, touch and hold it, tap **Share**, and then choose how you want to share it.
 - **Forward a message.** Tap the message (do not tap a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then tap **Forward**.
 - **Check message details.** Tap the message (do not tap a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then tap **View message details**.

Reply to an Alternate Contact Phone Number

When a contact has multiple phone numbers stored on your phone, you'll see the particular phone number used below the contact's name. You can select which phone number to reply to. Keep in mind that your response will be sent to the phone number of the latest message you've received from this contact.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Tap  > **Recipient phone number**, and select which phone number you want to reply to.
4. Tap the "Add text" box, and then enter your reply message.
5. Tap .

Forward a Message

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Tap the message, and then tap **Forward**.

Receive Text Messages From Contacts Using an iPhone

If you have just migrated your contacts from an iPhone to your new HTC phone, your contacts may still be texting you through iMessage and not through SMS or MMS.

To receive text messages from your contacts who are using an iPhone, you must unregister the phone number you used on your old iPhone from your Apple support profile.


Or, if you still have your old iPhone, turn off the service in iMessage settings.

View and Save an Attachment from a Multimedia Message

When you receive a multimedia message, you can view and save files that are attached to it.

- If there's a media attachment such as a photo or video in a received message, tap it to view the content.
- To save the attachment, touch and hold the multimedia message, and then choose to save the type of attachment from the options menu.
- If the attachment is a contact (vCard), tap it to view the contact information, and then tap **Save** to add to your contacts.

- If the attachment is an appointment or event (vCalendar), tap it to choose the calendar where to save it, and then tap **Import**.

Note: If you are concerned about the size of your data downloads, you can choose to check the size and subject first before you download a multimedia message. On the All messages screen, tap  > **Settings > Multimedia messages (MMS)**. Clear the **Auto-retrieve option**.




Help Protect Your Messages

You can move private text messages to the Secure box. You will need to enter a password to read messages in the Secure box.


Important: The Secure box does not encrypt messages.

Important: Message stored on your SIM card cannot be moved to the secure box.

Move Messages to the Secure Box




1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Tap  > **Move to secure box**.
4. Select the messages, and then tap **MOVE**.

Note: To move all the messages from a contact, on the All messages screen, touch and hold the contact and tap **Move to secure box**.

- To read messages in the Secure box, on the All messages screen, tap  > **Secure**. If it is your first time to use the Secure box, set a password.
- To remove messages or contacts from the Secure box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and tap **Move to general box**.




Protect a Message from Deletion

You can lock a message so that it will not be deleted even if you delete the other messages in the conversation.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Tap the message (not a link or a phone number) that you want to lock, and then tap **Lock message**. A lock icon  is displayed at the lower right of the message.

Block Unwanted Messages

Declutter your Messages screen by moving spam messages from contacts to the block box. If you have blocked a contact, that contact's messages will also be in the block box.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**
 2. Do any of the following:
 - On the All messages screen, touch and hold a contact (or phone number) and tap **Block contact**.
 - To block multiple contacts, tap  > **Block contacts**, select the contacts, and tap **BLOCK**.
- ❖ When the contact sends you messages, you will not see them in the All messages screen or receive notifications and calls.





To read messages in the block box, on the All messages screen, tap  > **Block**.

Note: To remove messages or contacts from the block box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and tap **Unblock**.

Note: To completely discard future messages from blocked contacts, clear the **Save block message** option in the Messages settings.

Delete Messages and Conversations

Tidy up your messages list by deleting old messages and conversations.




1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, do any of the following:
 - **Delete a message.** Open the conversation thread with a contact, tap the message, and then tap **Delete message**. To delete multiple messages within a conversation, tap  > **Delete messages > Delete by selection**, and then select the messages to delete.
 - **Delete a conversation.** Touch and hold a contact (or phone number), and then tap **Delete**. To delete multiple conversations, on the Messages screen, tap  > **Delete threads**, and then select the conversations to delete.

Tip: In the Messages settings, tap **General > Delete old messages** to auto delete old messages.

Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages





Back up important text messages to your phone's storage or to your email account.

Back Up Text Messages

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap  > **Back up/Restore SMS** > **Back up**.
3. Tap **OK** > **Back up SMS**.
4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
5. Enter a name for your backup file, and then tap **OK**.

Back Up Text Messages Using Mail




Important: You need to set up your email account in Mail.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap  > **Back up/Restore SMS** > **Back up**.
3. Tap **OK** > **Back up SMS via mail**.
4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
5. Select the email app to use. The email app compose screen opens with the backup file attached.
6. Enter your email address.
7. Compose your email message, and tap .

Note: To restore your text messages on your phone, open the email message with the backup file attachment from the Mail application. Tap the attachment to open the Restore SMS screen and then tap the backup file to restore your text messages.

Restore Text Messages

You can only restore text messages that were exported using the Back up SMS feature.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.
2. On the All messages screen, tap  > **Back up/Restore SMS** > **Restore**.
3. Select a restore setting, and tap **NEXT**.
4. Tap the backup file to import.
5. Enter the password, and tap **OK**.

Text and Multimedia Message Options

You can set how your phone notifies you when you receive a new text or multimedia message, or set other messaging options.

1. Tap  >  **Messages**.

2. On the All messages screen, tap  > **Settings**. You can set the following options:

- **Notifications: Received messages**

- **Received notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
- **Play notification sound:** If you want the phone to ring when a new message arrives, select this option.
- **Notification sound:** Select a ringtone that is specific to new text and multimedia messages. Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.
- **Vibrate:** Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
- **Heads-up notification:** Select to display the message preview without leaving the current app you're in.

- **Notifications: Sent messages**

- **Sent notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is sent successfully.
- **Failure notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is not sent successfully.
- **Play notification sound:** If you want the phone to ring when a sent or failure notification is received, select this option.
- **Notification sound:** Select a ringtone that is specific to sent or failure notifications. Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.
- **Vibrate:** Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message is sent.
- **Display message on screen:** Set your phone to show pop-up notifications (not just in the status bar) when your messages are sent successfully or not. You can also select **None** to disable this option.

- **Text Messages (SMS) Settings**

- **Priority setting:** Set the priority for outgoing text messages.

- **SMS characters:** Select this option to correctly display special accented characters in SMS messages.
- **Multimedia Messages (MMS) Settings: MMS settings**
 - **Auto-retrieve:** Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely. When selected, the multimedia message header plus the message body and attachments will automatically download to your phone. If you clear this check box, only the multimedia message header will be retrieved and shown in the All messages screen.
 - **Roaming auto-retrieve:** Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely while roaming. Data roaming charges will apply.
 - **Priority setting:** Set the priority for outgoing MMS messages.
 - **Maximum message size:** Set the maximum file size of a multimedia message. The multimedia message will not be sent out if it exceeds the file size set here.
 - **Attachment storage:** Select the storage where you want to save multimedia message attachments. This is disabled for phones with no storage card.
 - **Connection settings:** View various connection settings such as the connection name and server address.
- **Multimedia Messages (MMS) Settings: Group Messages**
 - **Group Messages:** Select to turn group MMS on or off. When you enable this, you will need to enter your phone number for group MMS.
- **General: Recipient list settings**
 - **Show sent message history:** Include the sent message history when searching for a message recipient.
 - **Show email address:** Include email addresses when searching for a message recipient.
- **General: Message preview**
 - **Message preview:** Set the number of lines of text to appear in the conversation on the All messages screen.
- **General: Storage settings**
 - **Delete old messages:** Automatically delete older messages, except for locked messages, when the set limits are reached.
 - **Text message limit:** Choose the maximum number of text messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)
 - **Multimedia message limit:** Choose the maximum number of MMS messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)
- **General: Settings**

- **Password:** Set a password for the Secure box.
- **Save block message:** Select to save blocked messages to the block box.
- **General: Signature**
 - **Use signature:** Select this option to add a signature to all your outgoing text and multimedia messages.
 - **Signature:** Tap to compose your own signature.
- **General: Personalize**
 - Lets you customize the message thread's background image and color and texture of message bubbles.
- **General: Font size**
 - Set the font size for message threads.
- **General: Callback number**
 - Enable or change the callback number for SMS messages.

Create and Send Gmail





Use Google's Gmail service and your Google Account to send, receive, and manage your Gmail messages. Before using Gmail, you must register a Google (Gmail) Account on your phone. See [Google Account](#) for details.


Gmail Cautions


Gmail is handled as email from a PC. Restricting email from PCs on your phone prevents your phone from receiving Gmail.

Create and Send a Gmail Message

Create and send an email message from your Gmail account.

1. Tap  >  >  Gmail.
2. In the inbox of the Gmail account you want to use, tap .
3. Fill in one or more recipients.

Note: If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, tap  next to the To field.

4. Enter the email subject, and then compose your email.
5. If you want to attach a photo, video, or file, tap  > **Attach file**, select the source of the

attachment, and then select the file to attach.

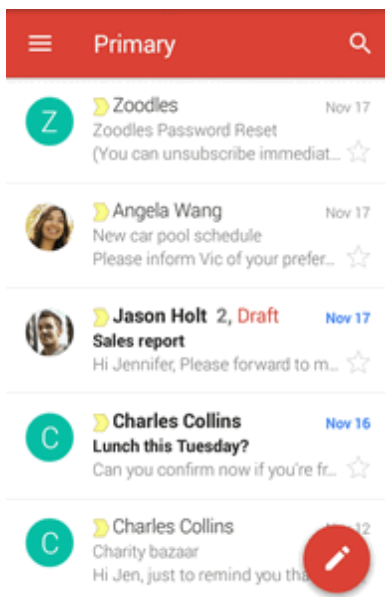
6. Tap  to send.

Note: While composing the message, tap  > **Save draft** to save it as a draft. To discard the message, tap  > **Discard**.


Check Received Gmail Messages

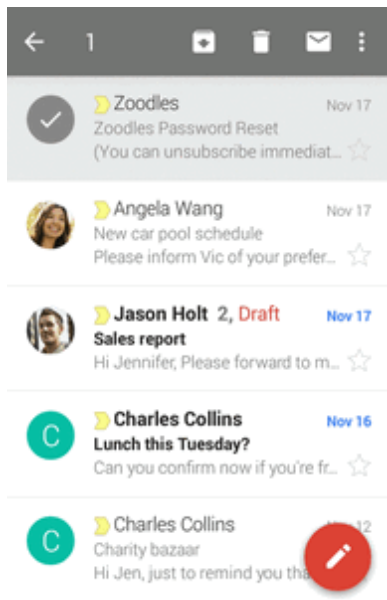
Your phone allows you to access, read, and reply to all your Gmail messages. All your received emails are delivered to your Inbox.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gmail**.



2. Do any of the following from your Inbox.

- Tap an email message (not the sender image or letter tile) to read, forward, or reply to the message.
- Tap  to change the inbox category (for example, **Social**), switch to your other Gmail account, or to display drafts, sent messages, or other email labels and categories.
- Tap the sender image or letter tile to select one or more messages or conversations. You can then tap the onscreen buttons at the top bar to archive, delete, or mark the selected messages or conversations.



Manage Gmail Messages

Your phone gives you control over how you manage your Gmail messages with labels, thread management, search capabilities, adding multiple Google Accounts, and more.

Reply To or Forward an Email Message

Use your Gmail Account to reply to or forward email messages.

1. Tap > > Gmail.
2. Tap the email message or conversation.
3. To reply to the sender, tap . Or, tap and choose whether to **Reply all** or **Forward**.
4. Do one of the following:
 - If you are replying to the sender or you selected **Reply all**, enter your reply message.
 - If you selected **Forward**, specify the message recipients.

Note: Tap **RESPOND INLINE** if you want to interleave your new message with the received email. However, this removes any attachments or formatting in the original email message.

5. Tap to send.

Add a Gmail Account

If you have two or more Gmail accounts, you can add them on your phone and easily switch between accounts in Gmail.

- To add another Gmail account, see [Create a Google Account](#).

Get Help with Gmail

Find out more about how to use Gmail.

- In the Gmail inbox, tap  > **Help & feedback**.





Email

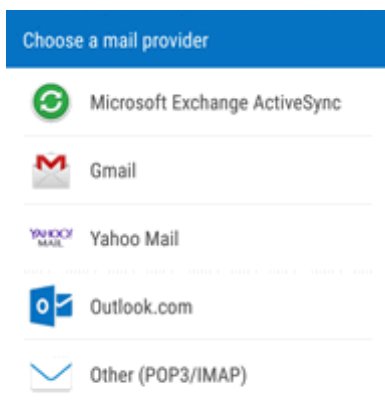
Use the Mail application to send and receive email from your webmail or other accounts, using POP3 or IMAP, or access your Exchange ActiveSync account for your corporate email needs.

Add an Email Account

You can add several types of personal email accounts, such as from a Web-based email service or email provider.

Tip: You can also set up an email account from the Accounts & sync settings. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Accounts & sync** > .

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Select an email account type from the list of email providers. Otherwise, if you've already added an email account during the setup process, tap  > **Add account**.







Important: If the account type you want to set up is not in the phone database, you will be asked to enter more details. You should get all pertinent information for the email account, such as incoming and outgoing server settings, before you proceed.

3. Enter the email address and password for your email account, and then tap **NEXT**.
4. Select the email data you'd like to sync with your phone, and then tap **NEXT**.
5. Enter a name for your email account, and then tap **FINISH SETUP**.

Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account




If you synchronize your phone with your Exchange ActiveSync account, you can read, manage, and send email in the same easy way as with a POP3/IMAP account. However, you can also access some powerful Exchange features. Ask your network administrator or email service provider for additional email settings that you may need.


1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Select **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**. Otherwise, if you've already added an email account during the setup process, tap  > **Add account** > **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**.
3. Tap **MANUAL SETUP** and enter the required information:
 - **Email address**: Enter your email address.
 - **Server address**: Enter your system's Exchange server remote email address. Obtain this information from your company network administrator.
 - **Domain**: Enter your network domain.
 - **Username**: Enter your username.
 - **Password**: Enter your network access password (case-sensitive).
 - **Encrypted SSLconnection**: Tap to place a checkmark in the box, if your system requires SSL encryption.
 - **Client certificate**: Tap to select client certification, if required.
4. Follow the onscreen prompts to configure options for the account.
5. Enter an account name and a display name and tap **DONE** to complete setup.

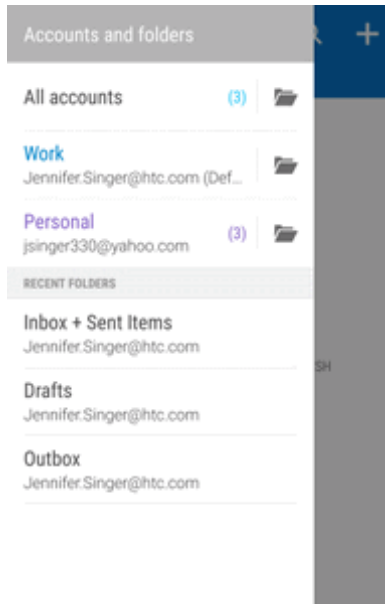
❖ Your corporate email account is set up and you will begin receiving email for the account.



Check Your Mail Inbox

When you open the Mail application, it displays the inbox of one of your email accounts that you've set up on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
 - ❖ The inbox of one of your email accounts appears.
2. Do any of the following:






- Tap an email message to read.
- To switch between email folders or accounts or view email messages from all your accounts, tap .



- To display email messages in another mail folder, tap  > **Folder**, and then tap the folder you want to view.
- To refresh the inbox, pull down the screen.
- To change an email account's settings, select the account and then tap  > **Settings**.





Organize Your Inbox


Organize your email messages into tabs and quickly find the messages you want.





1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. In the inbox, tap  > **Edit tabs**.
4. Select the tabs you want to add to the inbox.
5. To arrange the tabs, drag , and then move the tab to its new location.
6. Tap **DONE**.
7. Swipe to the added tab to check your email messages.

Send an Email Message

Send an email message to your contacts using an email account in Mail.






1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Tap .
4. Fill in one or more recipients.

Tip: If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, tap  > **Show Cc/Bcc**.

5. Enter the subject, and then compose your message.
6. Do any of the following:
 - Add an attachment. Tap  and then choose what you want to attach.
 - Set the priority for an important message. Tap  > **Set priority**.
7. Tap  to send. Or to send it later, tap  > **Save**.




Note: If there's no Wi-Fi or data connection available or Airplane mode is on when you send your email, the email is saved to the Outbox folder. Once there's Wi-Fi or data connection available, the saved email will be sent automatically next time your phone syncs.


Resume a Draft Email Message

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. In an email account inbox, tap  > **Folder** > **Drafts**.
3. Tap the message.
4. When you finish editing the message, tap .


Read and Reply to an Email Message

Read email messages and reply to them promptly in the Mail app.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. In the email account inbox, tap the email you want to read.

Note: If you want to read a particular message inside an email conversation, tap  to expand the conversation, and then tap the email message.

4. Tap **REPLY** or **REPLY ALL**.


Tip: Tap  for more actions for the email.

Quickly Reply to an Email Message

You can quickly respond to a new email message from the Home screen or lock screen.

1. When you receive a new email message notification, slide the Notifications panel down.
2. On the email preview, tap **REPLY ALL** or **FORWARD**.

Note: If you have several notifications and you don't see the email options, expand the email preview by sliding two fingers apart on the notification.

3. Compose your reply message and tap .

Save an Image in an Email Message

While viewing an email message, touch and hold an embedded image, and then tap **Save image**.

 You'll find the saved image in the **Downloads** folder.

You can also copy the image to the clipboard or set it as your wallpaper.

Note: If the image does not show, tap **Display images**.

Manage Email Messages




The Mail app provides easy ways to sort, move, or delete your email messages.

Sort Email Messages

Customize how you sort your email messages.

- From an email account inbox, tap  > **Sort**, and select from the sorting options.




Move Email Messages to Another Folder

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Select the email messages you want to move.

Tip: To select all, select one email message first, and then tap  > **Select all**.

4. Tap **MOVE TO** and then select a folder.

Delete Email Messages






1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Select the email messages you want to delete.

Tip: To select all, select one email message first, and then tap  > **Select all**.

4. Tap **DELETE** > **OK**.




Search Email Messages

If you have a long list of email messages in your inbox, you can easily search for that important email.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Tap .
3. If you want to refine or filter your search, tap , check the search options, and then tap **OK**. For example, you can focus the search on a part of an email or filter email messages that have attachments or tagged as high priority.
4. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for.
5. Tap a result to open the email message.

Search Emails From a Contact




Search emails from a contact when you remember the sender, but can't find that particular message.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account you want to use.
3. Touch and hold an email message from a contact.
4. Tap **Show all mail from sender**. A list of email messages from that contact appears.

Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email

Enjoy the powerful email features of Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync right on your phone. Flag important email messages, set your out of the office reply, or send invites to your next team meeting while you're on the go.





Flag Email Messages

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. While viewing your Exchange ActiveSync email inbox, tap the flag icon that appears on the right of an email message or conversation. The icon turns red after you flagged the email or conversation.





Tip: To flag an email message inside a conversation, tap  to expand the conversation, and then tap the flag icon of the email message.

Set Your Out of Office Status

You can set your Out of Office status and auto-reply message right from your phone.






1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. Tap  > **Out of the office**.
4. Tap your current office status, and then select **Out of the office**.
5. Set the dates and times for the period when you will be out of the office.
6. Enter the auto-reply message.
7. If you want a different auto-reply message for recipients outside your organization, select the **Send replies to external senders** option, and then enter the auto-reply message in the box that appears.
8. Tap **SAVE**.

Send a Meeting Request

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. Tap  > **New meeting invitation**.
4. Enter the meeting details.
5. Tap **SAVE**. Or tap **SEND** if you've invited people to the meeting.

Use Smart Sync

Smart Sync automatically extends the sync time the longer the Mail app is inactive. Set your email account to Smart Sync when you don't need to check new email messages frequently. Smart Sync helps save battery power.





1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account where you want to use Smart Sync.
3. Tap  > **Settings** > **Sync, Send & Receive**.
4. Tap **Peak time sync** and select **Smart Sync**.
5. Tap **Off-peak sync** and select **Smart Sync**.
6. Tap .

Smart Sync then extends the email synchronization time after each auto sync time passes and you don't open the Mail app. To sync your email at any time, open the Mail app and refresh your inbox.

If you want to receive email messages as they arrive, select another peak and off-peak sync schedule in the email account's **Sync, Send & Receive** settings.





Delete an Email Account

Delete an email account from your phone if you want to discontinue using that account.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to delete.
3. Tap  > **Settings** > **Delete account**.
4. Tap **OK** to confirm.

Change the Email Account Settings

Change your email account settings such as the email account name and password, signature, sync schedule, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account you want to change.
3. Tap  > **Settings**, and choose from these options:
 - **Account settings**: Change the email account settings such as the name, email address, password, and description.
 - **General settings**

- **Mail body font size:** Set the font size when reading email messages.
- **Use signature:** Select to append a signature to your outgoing email messages.
- **Signature:** Set the signature for outgoing email messages.
- **Set as default account:** Select to use the current email account as the default account to send email messages.
- **Attachment cache:** Select where to cache email attachments.
- **Ask before deleting:** Select to display a confirmation box when deleting email messages.
- **Portrait body preview:** Set the number of lines of text to display for email messages in the inbox.
- **Show threaded view:** Select to group messages and related replies into threads.
- **Clear search history.** Clears your email search history.
- **Sync, Send & Receive**
 - **Peak time sync:** Set the synchronization schedule during your set peak time.
 - **Peak time:** Set the time when you receive the most number of email messages.
 - **Off-peak sync:** Set the synchronization schedule during your set off-peak time.
 - **Download past mail** or **Download options** (POP email): Set how many days or number of emails to download past email messages.
 - **Refresh on open:** Select to automatically download email messages when you open an email folder.
 - **Folder to sync:** Select the folder to synchronize whenever you launch Mail.
 - **Sync deleted items from server** (POP email only): Select to remove messages from your phone when they're deleted from the mail server.
 - **Mail size limit:** Set the maximum email file size for incoming messages.
 - **Message format** (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set email messages to display in HTML or plain text format.
 - **Include file attachment** (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set the size of email attachments that will be automatically downloaded with email messages.
 - **Reply with original text:** Select to include the original email text when replying.
 - **Forward with attachment** (POP email only): Select to include email attachments when you forward the email.

- **Delete mail on server** (POP email only): Select to remove mail from the server when you delete it on your phone.
- **Always bcc me**: Select to always send yourself a copy of all email messages that you send.
- **Notification settings**
 - **Email notifications**: Select to turn on email notifications on your phone.
 - **Play notification sound**: Set the phone to play a sound when a new email message arrives.
 - **Notification sound**: Select the sound to play when a new email message arrives.
 - **Vibrate**: Set the phone to vibrate when a new email message arrives.
- **Delete account**: Tap to delete the email account.

4. Tap  to save your changes.

Data Services General Information (Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks)

The following topics will help you learn the basics of using your data services, including managing your user name, launching a data connection, and navigating the Web with your phone.

Important: Certain data services requests may require additional time to process. While your phone is loading the requested service, the touchscreen may appear unresponsive when in fact they are functioning properly. Allow the phone some time to process your data usage request.


Sprint Spark LTE

The Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network provides your phone with wireless Internet access over greater distances than Wi-Fi and delivers data transfer rates of up to 60 Mbps. To connect your phone to Sprint Spark, you need to be in an area covered by the Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network.


For more information about the availability of Sprint Spark in your location, visit sprint.com/coverage.

Note: The availability and range of the network depends on a number of factors including your distance to the base station, and infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

Set Your Network Options

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **Mobile data** > **Network mode**.

3. Select **LTE /CDMA** or **Automatic**. The phone will scan for the best available Sprint network and will automatically connect to it.

When your phone is connected via Sprint Spark, the Sprint Spark icon **LTE**  appears in the status bar and tells you the approximate signal strength (number of bands displayed).

Note: The network is self-discoverable, which means no additional steps are required for your phone to connect to it.


Your User Name

When you buy your phone and sign up for service, you're automatically assigned a user name, which is typically based on your name and a number, followed by "@sprintpcs.com." (For example, the third John Smith to sign up for Sprint data services might have jsmith003@sprintpcs.com as his user name.)

When you use data services, your user name is submitted to identify you to the network. Your user name is automatically programmed into your phone. You don't have to enter it.

Find Your User Name


You can find your user name through your phone's device menu.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Tap **About** > **Phone identity**.

 You'll find your user name in the Current username field.

Update Your User Name


If you choose to change your user name and select a new one online, or make any changes to your services, you must then update the profile on your phone.



1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Tap **System updates** > **Update profile**.

 Your phone will download and install the profile update.

Data Connection Status and Indicators

Your phone displays the current status of your data connection through indicators at the top of the screen. The following symbols are used:

Icon	Status
	Network (full signal): The number of bars indicate the strength of the signal. More bars mean a better signal.

Icon	Status
	Sprint Spark (data service): Your phone is connected to the Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network (data service)
	3G (data service): Your phone is connected to the 3G network. When the icon animates, your phone is transferring or receiving data.

Turn the Data Connection On or Off


Turn your data connection off to optimize the phone's battery life and your data usage.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **MOBILE DATA** tile to turn data connection on or off.

Note: If you don't have the data connection turned on and you're also not connected to a Wi-Fi network, you won't receive automatic updates to your email, social network accounts, and other synced information.

Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off

To help conserve power and data usage, you can set a time period when the data connection will automatically turn off during low peak times. This takes effect after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage).

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Tap **Power > Sleep mode**.
3. To manually change the settings, clear **Learn sleep time automatically** if it's selected.
4. Choose the start and end time when data connection is disabled.
5. Tap the **Sleep mode** ON/OFF switch to turn it on.

The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.

Manage Your Data Usage

If you're on a limited data allowance, it's important to keep track of the activities and apps that usually send and receive data, such as browsing the Web, syncing online accounts, and sending email or sharing status updates.

Here are some other examples:


- Streaming Web videos and music
- Tuning in to Internet radio
- Playing online games
- Downloading apps, maps, and files


- Refreshing apps to update info and feeds
- Uploading and backing up your files to your online storage account
- Using your phone as a Mobile Hotspot
- Sharing your mobile data connection by USB tethering

To help you save on data usage, connect to a Wi-Fi network whenever possible and set your online accounts and emails to sync less frequently.


Keep Track of Your Data Usage

Note: Data usage measured by your phone may differ from, and be less than, your actual data usage.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More > Data usage**.
3. On the **MOBILE** tab, select **Limit mobile data usage** to automatically disable your data connection when you reach the set limit. Then, drag the upper LIMIT line to set your monthly data limit.
4. Select **Alert me about data usage**, and then drag the lower ALERT line to set an alert before you reach your monthly data limit.
5. Tap **Reset data usage**, and then set the day of the month when your usage cycle resets. This date is usually the start of your monthly billing cycle.
6. Drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.

Note: If you're connecting your phone to another portable Wi-Fi hotspot, tap  > **Mobile hotspots** to restrict background data from downloading that may incur extra data connection.








View the Data Usage of Apps

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More > Data usage**.
3. On the **MOBILE** tab, drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.
4. Scroll down the screen to see a list of apps and their data usage info.
5. Tap an app to see more details.




Chrome Browser

Your phone comes with the Chrome mobile Web browser. If you are signed in with a Google Account, the Chrome browser will import all your bookmarks and other Web preferences for use on your phone.

Go to a Website






1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap the address bar at the top and enter search words (for a Google search) or a Web address (URL). If the address bar does not show, scroll down the screen.
3. On the webpage, you can:
 - Tap a link to open it, or touch and hold a link to see more options.
 - Tap an email address to send a message to the email address, save it to People, and more.
 - Touch and hold an image to save, copy, or set it as your wallpaper.
 - While browsing a webpage, tap  and select the **Request desktop site** to display the full desktop version of the webpage.
4. To return to the previous webpage you've viewed, tap  > . To go forward, tap  > .


Find Text In a Web Page

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Navigate to a webpage and tap  > **Find in page**.
3. Enter the search item. As you enter characters, matching characters will be highlighted.
4. Tap the up or down arrow to go to the previous or next matching item.

Use Browser Tabs






Open multiple browser tabs to make it easier for you to switch from one website to another.

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. While viewing a Web page, tap  > **New tab**. Repeat the same to open new browser tabs.
3. To switch among browser tabs, tap  and then tap the webpage you want to view.
4. To close a browser tab, tap  and then swipe up the tab you want to close.

Tip: Opened browser tabs reside in the Recent apps screen. If you want to see the browser tabs inside Chrome, you can disable this feature. On the browser screen, tap  > **Settings > Merge tabs and apps**, tap the switch, and then tap **OK**.

Add Bookmarks

Add your favorite webpages as bookmarks so you can access them quickly.

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. While viewing a Web page, tap  and then tap .
3. Edit the bookmark name or save the bookmark in a folder.
4. Tap **Save**.
5. To view and open a bookmark, tap  > **Bookmarks**. Navigate to the bookmark you want to open, and then tap it.




Note: You can also add a bookmark directly to the Home screen. While viewing a webpage, tap  > **Add to homescreen**.

Browsing History




Your phone keeps a record of webpages you've visited.

Note: If you don't want your phone to keep your browsing history, browse using an incognito tab. See [Private Browsing](#) for details.

Check your Browsing History

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap  > **History**.
3. Navigate to the webpage that you want to view, and then tap it.




Clear Your Browsing History

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap  > **History**.
3. Tap **CLEAR BROWSING DATA**.
4. Select the browsing data you want to delete, and then tap **CLEAR**.

Tip: If you want to select which webpage entry to delete, while on the History screen, tap  next to the entry you want to delete.

Private Browsing




You can use incognito tabs to browse the Web with more privacy. Browser cookies are not shared and are deleted when you close all incognito tabs. Pages you view in incognito also won't appear in your browser history except for files you download.

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap  > **New incognito tab**.
3. Tap the address bar at the top and enter search words (for a Google search) or a Web address (URL) as you would normally do on a new browser tab.

Tip: To quickly close all incognito tabs, swipe down the Notifications panel and then tap the Chrome notification.

Set Browser Options

Customize the Web browser to suit your browsing style. Set display, privacy, and security options when using the browser.

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap  > **Settings**.
3. Change the settings.

Chrome Support

Find on-phone help with Chrome.

1. Tap  >  **Chrome**.
2. Tap  > **Help & Feedback**.

❖ A Web page will open displaying Google help for Chrome.

Tip: For more information, from your computer, visit [google.com](https://www.google.com).




Search for Information

Start your search by entering a keyword or by using Google Voice Search™.

Note: Some apps, such as People or Mail, have their own search function, which you can use to search only within those apps.

Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone

You can search for information on your phone and on the Web.

1. Tap  >  > **Google**  . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.






Tip: If you've already set up a Google Account on your phone, you will be given the option to sign in to Google Now™. To sign in to Google Now at a later time, tap **SKIP**.

2. In the search box, enter what you want to search for. As you type, matching items on your phone and suggestions from Google Web search are shown.
 - To search for the information exclusively on your phone, swipe your finger up the screen, and then tap **Search Phone**.
3. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, tap the item to open it in its compatible app.

Search the Web with Your Voice




Use Google Voice Search to find information on the Web just by speaking to your phone.



Note: Searching with your voice is not supported on all languages.

1. Tap  >  > **Google**  . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Tap  and then say what you want to search for. After speaking, matching items from Google Web search are shown.
3. If what you're searching for is in the list, tap the item to open it in its compatible app. Otherwise, tap  to search again.

Set Search Options

You can select or customize your search preferences.

1. Tap  >  > **Google Settings** .
2. Tap **Search & Now** and tap the options you want to change.

Tip: To get help or provide feedback, tap  . Or tap  > **Help & feedback** on the Google Settings screen.

Get Instant Information with Google Now

Google Now delivers quick and up-to-date information that matters to you — all without the search.




Depending on your location, time of day, and previous Google searches, Google Now displays information cards that include:


- The day's weather and the weather forecast for upcoming days.
- The traffic conditions on your way to work or your commute back home.
- The directions and travel time to your next appointment.

- The next train or bus arriving at your platform or bus stop.
- Your favorite team's score and stats while you enjoy the game.

Set Up Google Now

Before setting up Google Now, make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account, you've turned on location services, and have an Internet connection. For more information on Location services, see [Location Settings](#).

1. Tap  >  > **Google** . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Tap **NEXT** on the Get Google Now! screen.





Note: If you've skipped setting up Google Now the first time you used Google search, you can turn it on via Google Settings. Tap  >  > **Google Settings**  and then tap **Search & Now > Now cards**. Tap the **Show cards** switch, and then tap **SET UP** on the Google Now screen.

3. Tap **YES, I'M IN**. Google Now information cards will start to appear on the Google search screen.
4. To see all available information cards, swipe up the screen and tap **More**.




Depending on the information that you've allowed to share, more information cards will appear on the Google search screen as you use your phone to search the Web, create appointments, and more.

Change Card Settings

You can easily customize the settings of Google Now cards to suit your information needs. For example, you can change the weather units in the Weather card or your transportation mode in the Traffic card.

1. Tap  >  > **Google** . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Do any of the following:
 - To change a card setting, such as the weather unit on the Weather card, tap **...**, and then tap the arrow buttons when available.
 - To change specific card information such as your work address and sports teams or stocks you follow, tap  > **Customize**, and then tap the information you want to change.

Dismiss or Hide Cards

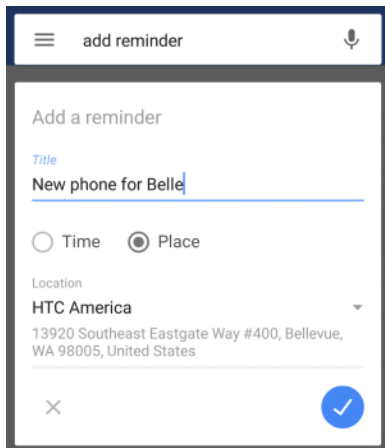
1. Tap  >  > **Google** . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Do any of the following:

- To dismiss a card, swipe it left or right.
- To keep the card from appearing on the Google search screen, tap **...** on the card you want to hide. Tap the left or right arrow buttons until you are asked whether you want to continue seeing the card, and then tap **No**.

Set Reminders in Google Now

Setting reminders in Google Now is an easy way to keep tab of things to do. You can set time or location-based reminders. When the reminder time is up or when you've arrived at the specified location, Google Now displays the Reminder card in the Google Search screen and sounds a notification to alert you.

1. Tap > > **Google** . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Tap > **Reminders** > .
3. Enter the reminder title, such as the task you want to be reminded of.
4. Select **Time** to set a time-based reminder or **Place** to set a location-based reminder.
5. Set the reminder time or location details.






6. Tap .

When the reminder time is due or when you've arrived at the location, the Reminder card will appear in the Google search screen. You can then dismiss or snooze the reminder.




Tip: To see a list of all your reminders, tap > **Reminders**.

Refresh Google Now

Refresh Google Now to update the information cards or show relevant cards for information that you've just added on your phone, like an upcoming event in Calendar.

1. Tap  >  > **Google**  . Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Pull down the screen with your finger, and then release to refresh.

Turn Off Google Now

1. Tap  >  > **Google Settings**  .
2. Tap **Search & Now** > **Now cards**.
3. Tap the **Show cards** switch to turn off Google Now.

Camera and Video

You can use the camera or video camera to take and share pictures and videos. Take great photos and videos with the camera, and make them more memorable by applying a variety of effects and scenes.

Take Pictures and Record Videos

The following topics teach you how to take pictures and record videos with your phone's camera.

Capturing Pictures/Videos

- **File Format for Pictures:** File format for pictures is JPEG.
- **File Format for Videos:** File format for videos is MPEG4.


! Camera Cautions

If Lens Becomes Dirty: Fingerprints/smudges on lens prevent capturing of clear still images/videos. Wipe lens with a soft cloth beforehand.

Avoid Exposure to Direct Sunlight: Be careful not to expose lens to direct sunlight for long periods. May discolor color filter and affect color of images.


Get Started with the Camera

Capture photos quickly with your phone. Just directly launch the camera from the lock screen, even if your phone is password protected.






1. When your display is off, press the Power/Lock button.
2. Drag  up so you can start taking photos and videos.



Tip: From the Home screen, you can also tap  to launch the camera.


3. Tap  to see all controls on the Viewfinder screen. You can use the controls to switch capture modes, add filters, set the flash, and more.



-  **Camera scenes:** Choose a scene to use for taking photos.
-  **Video mode:** Choose a scene to use for recording videos.
-  **ISO level:** Choose an ISO level or set it back to **Auto**. Higher ISO works best in low light conditions.
-  **Exposure setting:** Choose an exposure setting. Higher exposure settings capture more light for your photos or videos.
- **AWB White balance setting:** Choose a white balance setting that matches your current lighting environment.
-  **Settings:** Choose from more basic and advanced camera settings.

Choose a Capture Mode

Switch to a capture mode to use for taking photos or videos.

- On the Viewfinder screen, tap , and then tap a capture mode.
- Swipe across the Viewfinder screen to switch between capture modes.
 - In landscape view, swipe from the top or bottom edge of the screen.
 - In portrait view, swipe from the left or right edge of the screen.

Zooming

- Before taking a photo or video, slide two fingers apart to zoom in or together to zoom out.
- When you're recording video, you can freely zoom in or out while recording.



Choose a Flash Mode

- On the Viewfinder screen, tap the flash icon to choose a flash mode.

When using Flash on or Auto flash mode, the camera intelligently sets the best flash brightness for your photo.




Use the Volume Buttons for Taking Photos and Videos



If you feel much comfortable with using push-buttons when taking photos and videos, you can set your phone to use the **Volume buttons** as the Camera app's shutter release or zoom controls.

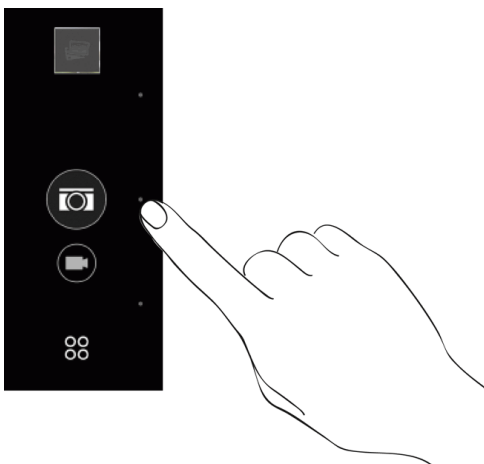
1. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
2. Tap  > **General settings** > **Volume button options**.
3. Choose how you want to use the **Volume buttons** when you're in the Camera app.

Tip: When in Zoe™ camera mode, you can press and hold either **Volume button** to take burst shots with a 3-second clip or record a longer video.

Close the Camera App

To give you a full view of the Viewfinder screen, your phone replaces , , and  with small dots.


- Tap a dot to show these buttons again, and then tap  or  to close the Camera app and return to the Home screen or the previous screen.




Take a Picture

Whether it's moving or not, clearly capture any moment with your phone's camera.

Note: If you have an SD card installed, you can choose to save pictures and videos to the SD card. If no card is installed, pictures and videos are saved to your phone's memory.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. Point the camera at what you want to capture. The camera adjusts the focus automatically as you move it.
4. When you're ready to take the shot, tap .

Tip: You can also tap anywhere on the screen to take a photo if you selected **Touch to capture** in  **> Camera options**.

Capture Better Photos

Here are some tips on how to improve the quality of your photos on your phone.


Improve Focus and Sharpness

- Your phone's camera has autofocus, which works best on a subject that is not moving too much. To change the focus, on the Viewfinder, tap the one you want to focus on.
- If the subject is moving, on the Viewfinder, touch and hold the subject to lock the focus.
- You can manually adjust the sharpness of a photo by editing in the Gallery app. You can also set the sharpness before taking a photo in the Camera settings. Generally, it is better to sharpen a blurry image rather than to reduce the sharpness in an image.

Take Well-lit Photos




- Your phone automatically adjusts the focus and exposure. If the image appears underexposed or appears dark on the Viewfinder screen, tap a part of the image that is in shadow. Conversely, tap a well-lit object in the image if the image seems to be overexposed. Focus on an object with a neutral tone for a balanced exposure. Keep in mind that tapping on another object may shift the focus from your subject.
- If you are using the default settings and the photo still appears too dark, switch to Night scene, but use a tripod or place your phone on a level surface.
- If there are parts of the image that are in shadows and others are in highlights, use **HDR** mode to capture three shots of different exposures and combine them into one shot. Keep your phone steady or place it on a level surface when using HDR.
- When taking a panorama shot, consider the whole scene and focus on an object that has a neutral tone to help keep the exposure balanced in the composite image.
- If your subject is lit from the back, use **Backlight** scene to highlight the foreground and keep some details of the background.

Other Tips



- In Camera settings, tap **Grid** to help frame the subject better or improve the composition.
- If taking photos under fluorescent or incandescent bulbs and the subject appears to be off-color, tap  > **AWB** and then choose a white balance setting. Check the image on the Viewfinder and select the option that displays the closest color to the natural color of the subject.
- In Camera settings, you can tap **Image adjustments** and adjust the exposure, contrast, and others before taking the photo.
- After capturing the photo, you can continue to edit the contrast, brightness, and others in the Gallery app.

Record a Video

Capture high-definition video clips that you can later share or create into movies.




1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. When you're ready to start recording, tap .
4. Change focus to a different subject or area by just tapping it on the Viewfinder screen.
5. Tap the flash icon to turn the flash on or off.
6. Tap **II** to pause the recording, and then tap  to resume.
7. Tap  to stop recording.



Set the Video Resolution

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. On the Viewfinder screen, tap .
3. Tap  > **Video Quality**, and then choose a video resolution.

Take a Photo While Recording a Video - VideoPic®





Use the Normal video scene when you want to take a photo while recording a video.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options. Make sure you see the  icon which means the **Normal** video scene is selected.
3. Tap  to start recording.

4. While recording, tap  to capture a still shot.
5. Tap  to stop recording.

Take Continuous Camera Shots

Take photos of moving subjects. Whether it's your kid's football game or a car race, you can capture the action. Use the Auto scene when you want to take continuous camera shots.



1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options. Make sure you see the  icon which means the **Auto** scene is selected.
4. Touch and hold the shutter button .
 - ❖ The camera takes up to 20 consecutive shots of your subject.
5. Choose what you want to do with the continuous shots:
 - To keep just one photo, select the photo that you like the most, and then tap **BEST SHOT**.
 - Tap **DELETE**, select the unwanted shots, and then tap Delete to save only the remaining shots
 - To save the whole batch of shots, tap .

Tip: To get creative with your photos, open and edit them in the Gallery app. Additional editing features are available for a batch of continuous shots, such as Sequence Shot, Always Smile, and Object Removal.

Change the Focus in Bokeh Mode

Use Bokeh mode to focus on any object that you see on the Viewfinder screen and blur its background.

Note: You need to be within a distance of 10 to 60 cm (4 in. to 2 ft) from the object you want to focus on.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Bokeh**. If you don't see this mode, tap **ADD > Bokeh** to add it first to the capture modes.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap the object you want to focus on.
4. When you're ready to take the photo, tap .

- ❖ Tap the small image thumbnail to open the photo you've just taken in Gallery and see the bokeh effect.

Selfies and People Shots





Take high-quality selfies with 4MP HTC UltraPixel™ front camera even in low-light conditions. Use your phone's cameras to take vivid group photos all the time.

Tips for Taking Selfies and People Shots

Look best in your shot. Here are some camera options you can adjust or select before taking selfies and people shots.

Portrait Scene

Using the Portrait scene helps a little in smoothing the skin in your selfies and people shots.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Camera** or **Selfie**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap .
5. Tap  to select the Portrait scene.




Live Makeup for Selfies

Touch up your skin with Live Makeup before taking your selfie.

- See [Apply Skin Touch-ups with Live Makeup](#).




Angle of Selfies

You can set the angle of your shots to look exactly the same as how you see yourself on the Viewfinder screen.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Camera** or **Selfie**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap  > **Camera options**.
5. Select the **Save mirror image** option.


Skin Touch-ups for People Shots

Beautify the skin of your subjects before taking their shots.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Camera**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options. Make sure you're using the scene setting.
4. Tap .
5. Tap **Make-up level**, and then adjust the skin smoothing level.

Apply Skin Touch-ups with Live Makeup





Touch up your skin before taking your selfie. Live Makeup smoothens your skin in real time.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Selfie** or **Photo booth** mode.
3. To change the skin smoothing level, drag the slider across the adjustment bar.

Tip: The adjustment bar is shown on the Viewfinder screen by default. To hide it, tap  > , and then clear the **Live Makeup** option.

Using Auto Selfie





Keep still to take an auto selfie—or just smile! You just need to turn this feature on in the camera settings.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Selfie**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap  > **Camera options**.
5. Select the **Auto Selfie** option, and then tap .
6. Pose and frame yourself on the Viewfinder screen.
7. To take your selfie automatically, look at the front camera, and then:
 - Stay still until the white box turns green on the Viewfinder screen.
 - Or smile at the camera. Hold your smile for a few seconds until your shot is taken.

Using Voice Selfie

Voice Selfie lets you easily take photo or video selfies using voice control. You just need to turn this feature on in the camera settings.





Note: This feature may not be available in all languages.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Selfie**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap  > **Camera options**.
5. Select the **Voice Selfie** option, and then tap .
6. Pose and frame yourself on the Viewfinder screen.
7. Look at the front camera, and then:
 - Say **Say Cheese** or **Capture** to take a photo selfie.
 - Say **Action** or **Rolling** to record a video selfie.

Tip: You can also use voice capture with the main camera. Switch to Camera mode, and then turn on Voice capture in the camera settings.





Take Photos with the Self-timer

When you use the self-timer, the Camera app counts down before taking the shot. You can set the countdown time.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Selfie**.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap  if you see this icon, and then tap the countdown time that you want.
5. To start the timer, tap . The camera takes the photo after the countdown.

Take Selfies with Photo Booth


Take several selfies and combine them into a single picture.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Photo Booth**. If you don't see this mode, tap **ADD** > **Photo Booth** to add it first to the capture modes.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  > , and then choose a layout for your selfies.
4. To start capturing, tap .






- ❖ The Camera app will take four selfies, capturing each shot every 2 seconds. You can change your pose for every shot.

Split Capture




Use the Split Capture mode to capture your selfie and the scenery in front of you. The split-screen shot can either be both photos or both videos.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Tap  > **Split Capture**. If you don't see this mode, tap **ADD** > **Split Capture** to add it first to the capture modes.
3. Drag the handle at the middle of the Viewfinder screen to adjust the size of the windows.



4. Tap  to toggle between the following options:
 -  **Asynchronous shot**. Separately capture photos or videos with the main and front cameras.
 -  **Synchronous shot**. Use the main and front cameras to capture both photos or both videos at the same time.
5. When taking an asynchronous shot, tap  to take a photo or  to record a video with the main camera. When done, tap the button again to capture your selfie.

If you need to retake the shot, tap to start over.







6. When taking a synchronous shot, tap  to take a photo or  to record videos with both cameras.
7. To save the split-screen shot, tap  .

Panoramic Shots

Get a wider shot of landscapes in one sweep. Or take a 360-degree panorama of what's around you.

Take a Panoramic Photo

Note: Some camera features are not available when you're in this mode, such as zooming.





1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
 2. Tap  > **Panorama**.
 3. If Pan 360 is selected, tap  > , and then tap  to switch to **Sweep panorama** mode.
 4. When you're ready to take the shot, tap .
 5. Pan left or right in either landscape or portrait view. Hold your phone as smoothly as you can to automatically capture frames. You can also tap  to stop capturing anytime.
- ❖ The camera stitches the frames into a single photo.

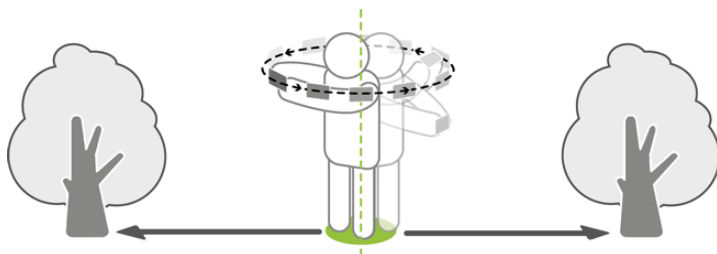
Take a Pan 360 Photo

The world isn't flat and your photos shouldn't be either.

Note: Some camera features are not available when you're in this mode, such as zooming.

Stand in the same spot even as you turn around to take more shots. For best results, remember to avoid capturing scenes with moving objects and keep a distance of at least five meters (16 feet) from the scene.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
 2. Tap  > **Panorama**.
 3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
 4. Tap , and then tap  to switch to **Pan 360** mode.
 5. Hold the phone at face level so you'll have more room to capture scenes above or below you.
 6. When you're ready to take the first shot, center the white box within the Viewfinder markers.
- ❖ The camera automatically captures the frame.
7. To take succeeding shots, pan HTC One M9 up, down, left, and right as smoothly as you can.



- ❖ As you pan in one direction, you'll see another white box. Center the white box again within the Viewfinder markers.

8. Pan repeatedly until you get your desired frames or when you don't see any more boxes.

9. To stop capturing anytime, tap .

Photos taken with Pan 360 are indicated by the  icon in Gallery.





Other Camera Features

Your phone's camera comes with other features including HDR and slow motion video.

Use HDR

When shooting portraits against a bright background, use HDR, short for High Dynamic Range, to capture your subjects clearly. HDR brings out the details of both the highlights and shadows, even in high contrast lighting.






Note: HDR works best when your subject is steady. The camera takes multiple shots at different exposure levels and combines them into one enhanced photo.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap , and then tap .
5. To take an HDR photo, tap .

Record Slow Motion Videos

Relive high speed action bit by bit and add a touch of suspense to your videos.

Note: Audio is recorded when you're in this scene, but will be turned on only when video is played in normal speed.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap , and then tap .
5. Tap  to start recording.
6. To stop recording, tap .



After recording your slow motion video, you can change the playback speed of selected sections when you edit the video in Gallery.

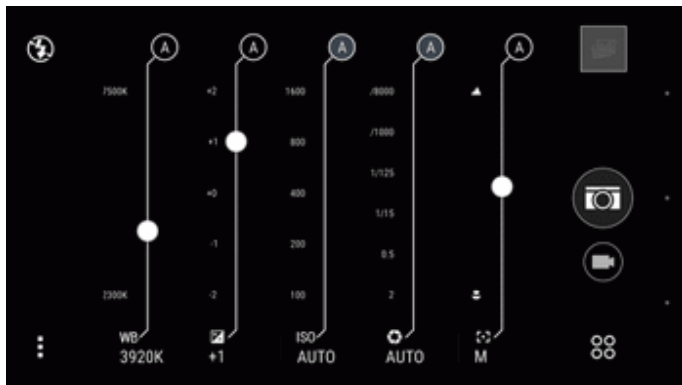
Camera Settings





Manually save your settings or save your customized settings as a camera mode.

Manually Adjusting Camera Settings

Take expert command of your camera settings for different environments or lighting conditions. You can manually increase or decrease the values for settings like white balance, exposure, ISO, and more.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Tap , and then tap **M**.
5. Tap a setting, and then drag its slider to make adjustments.



6. To change a setting back to auto, tap .
7. When done, tap . To display the settings again, tap .
8. When you're ready to take a photo, tap .



Tip: You can save your customized settings as a new capture mode. See [Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode](#).


Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode

Save a scene or custom settings as a new camera mode so you can conveniently use it anytime you need it.


1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to the camera mode you want to use.

Note: Some capture modes may not support modifying the camera settings.

3. On the Viewfinder screen, tap  to show the camera options.
4. Modify the settings as desired.
5. When done, tap  > **Save custom camera**.
6. Enter a name, and then tap **SAVE**.

❖ Tap  on the viewfinder screen, and then tap your created capture mode whenever you want to use it.

Modify a Customized Camera Mode

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to the camera mode that you've created.
3. Modify the scene or settings.
4. When done, tap  > **Save custom camera**.
5. Tap **Yes** to save changes to the existing mode.

View Pictures and Videos Using Gallery

Using the Gallery application, you can view pictures and watch videos that you've taken with your phone's camera, downloaded, or copied onto your storage card or phone memory. You can also take a look at your pictures and your friends' pictures that are on your social networks (Facebook and Flickr® only).

When viewing your photos and videos, the onscreen navigation buttons will be hidden. Tap anywhere on the screen to see Gallery controls and onscreen navigation buttons.

View Pictures and Videos





You can access and view all your stored pictures and videos from your phone's Gallery.

View Photos and Videos Organized by Time

Photos and videos on your phone are grouped together in Timeline view according to when they were taken.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Timeline** to switch to Timeline view.

❖ You'll then see tab icons for switching between different layouts.





- Tap  to see your photos and videos individually arranged in a feed.
- Tap  to see your photos and videos in a grid layout.
- Tap  to see your photos and videos organized by events.
- Tap  to see your photos and videos organized by year, then tap a month to see the shots you've taken at that time.

3. Tap a photo or video to see it in full screen.

You can also slide two fingers together or apart on the screen to scroll through the Timeline, feed, grid, and year layouts.


View Photos and Videos by Album

You can choose to view your photos and videos grouped together in albums.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Albums** to switch to Albums view.
3. Tap a tile to open an album.
4. Tap a photo or video to see it in full screen.






View Your Favorite Photos

Easily see all your favorite photos in one place. You can add photos to the **My favorites** album.

- To add a photo to the **My favorites** album, find and view the photo in full screen, tap the photo, and then tap  > **Favorite**.
- To view these favorite photos, open the **My favorites** album.
- To remove a photo from the **My favorites** album, touch and hold the thumbnail and then tap **Remove**.





Show or Hide Albums

Have too many albums cluttering your Gallery? You can choose to show or hide albums.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Albums** to switch to Albums view.
3. Tap  > **Show/hide albums**.
4. Choose which albums you'd like to show or hide.

Rename an Album

If you have created albums to organize photos, you can rename these albums.







1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Albums** to switch to Albums view.
3. Touch and hold the album you want to rename.
4. Tap **Rename**.


Note: Some albums, like **Camera shots** and **Highlights**, cannot be renamed.

View Photos by Location

Using Map view, you can view photos according to location.





Note: Only photos with geo-tag info appear on the map.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Locations** to switch to Locations view.
 - ❖ You'll see tiles of photos taken at specific locations, with numbers that indicate how many photos were taken in each location.
3. Tap  to display Map view.
4. Zoom out or pan across the map until a numerical location indicator  appears. The number in the location indicator shows how many photos were taken in that area.
5. Tap the location indicator to see the photos taken in that area.

Tip: Want to know where you took a particular photo? While viewing the photo in full screen, tap anywhere on the screen, and then tap  > **Show on map**. (**Show on map** is available when you've enabled **Geo-tag photos** in Camera.)






Add Location Information

To be more specific about your photos, you can add names of points of interests (POI) to your photos, too.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Locations** to switch to Locations view.
3. Swipe to the **PLACES** tab.
4. Tap **Tap to edit location** > **Add a new place**.

5. Tap a point of interest to add a POI from Foursquare® or tap **New place** to manually enter a new name.
6. Tap **SAVE**.







Change Location Information

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Locations** to switch to Locations view.
3. Swipe to the **PLACES** tab.
4. Find the grouping you want to rename or edit, tap  , and try one of the following:
5. Tap **Save**

What to do	How to do it
Select another POI	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tap Edit location > Tap to edit location. 2. Tap a point of interest to add a POI from Foursquare or tap New place to manually enter a new name. 3. Tap SAVE.
Rename the location	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tap Rename this place. You'll only see Rename this place if the name is stored on your phone. 2. Enter a new name. 3. Tap SAVE.

Add Photos or Videos to an Album







You can add photos or videos to an existing album or a new one.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
3. Open a group of photos and videos, such as an event in Timeline view or an album.
4. Tap  > **Add to album**.
5. Select the photos or videos you want to add, and then tap **NEXT**.
6. Create an album or select an album that you've already created in Gallery. To create a new album to move or copy to, tap  .

Tip: To add a single photo or video to an album, touch and hold the photo or video. Tap **Add to album**, and then select the destination album or create a new album.







Copy or Move Photos or Videos Between Albums

It's easy to copy and move photos or videos between your albums.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Albums** to switch to Albums view.
3. Tap a tile to open an album.
4. Tap  > **Move to** or **Copy to**.
5. Select the photos or videos you want to move or copy and then tap **NEXT**.
6. Select an album to move or copy the photos or videos to. To create a new album to move or copy to, tap .





Tag Photos and Videos

Make your photos and videos easy to find by adding tags, such as short names or keywords.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
3. Tap a tile to open a group of photos and videos.
4. Tap  > **Add tag**.
5. Select items that you'll tag with the same keywords, then tap **NEXT**.
6. Type in a keyword, and then tap . Or, to use an existing tag, just tap it below the text field.
7. Add more keywords when needed.
8. If you need to remove a tag you've added, just tap the tag, and then tap **OK**.
9. Tap **SAVE**.

Tip: To tag a single photo or video, touch and hold the photo or video. Tap **Add tag**, and then enter your keywords.







View Tagged Photos and Videos

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Tags**.
 - ❖ You'll see tiles of your used tags, with numbers that indicate how many photos and videos belong to each tag.







3. Tap a tile to open it and view tagged photos and videos.

Rename a Tag

You can rename a tag that you've already added to your photos and videos.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Tags**.
3. Find the tile of the tag you want to rename, then tap  > **Rename tag**.
4. Type the new tag name in the text field, then tap .
5. Tap **OK** to save your changes.






Remove Tags

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **Tags**.
3. Find the tile of the tag you want to modify.
4. To untag photos and videos, tap the tile, and then tap  > **Remove tag**. Select the items, then tap **Remove**.
5. To completely delete a tag, tap  in the tile, then tap **Remove tag**.

Note: Deleting a tag will not delete any of your photos and videos.






Search for Photos and Videos

You can search the Gallery using tags and photo locations.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap .
3. In the search field, type a tag or a location associated with the photo or video you're looking for. You can also search for photo taken on a specific date. You must use the same date format as that set in **Settings > Date & time**, such as 01/13/2015.
4. Tap .
5. Select what you want from the matching results.

Find Matching Photos








Use Image match to find photos faster instead of browsing through Gallery.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
3. Tap .
4. Tap **IMAGE MATCH** and find a photo that is visually similar to what you want to find.
5. Tap the photos that are most similar to what you want to find and do one of the following:
 - Tap **CONTINUE** to display more matches.
 - Tap **FINISH** to see the results.
6. On the Images matched screen, select all of the images you want to save to a new album, and then tap **SAVE**.

Tip: You can also find matching images while viewing a photo in full screen. Tap  > **Image match**.

View Pan 360 Photos








Enjoy viewing your Pan 360 photos with these instructions.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
3. Tap a tile to open the thumbnail view.
4. When you see the Pan 360 photo you want, tap it to view in full screen. You can identify Pan 360 photos by the  icon on the thumbnail.
5. Tap  to explore the Pan 360 photo.
6. Try any of the following:
 - Tilt your phone or drag your finger on the screen to pan the photo.
 - Tap the rotation indicator at the top left corner to re-center the photo.
 - Slide two fingers together or apart to zoom the photo.
 - Rotate two fingers to rotate the photo.
 - Tap  to save the current view of the photo.

Change the Video Playback Speed

Add a cinematic flair to your videos by slowing down particular scenes. You can vary the playback speed of selected sections of a slow motion video.




Note: You can only change the video playback speed of videos captured using the slow motion scene in Camera.

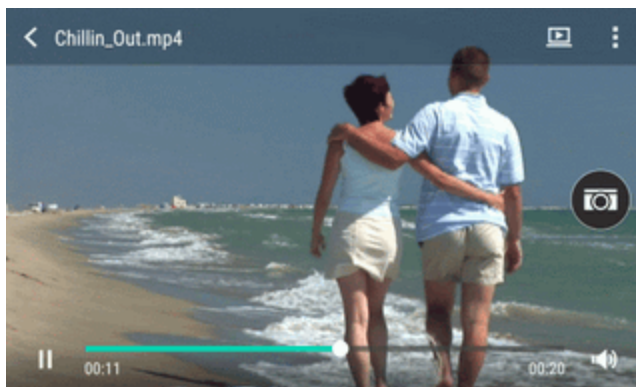
1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Open the video you want to play in full screen. You can identify slow motion videos by the  icon on the thumbnail.
3. Tap  to switch between normal and slow motion playback.
4. To adjust the playback speed of the video, tap  > **Edit** > **Adjust playback speed**.
5. Frame the sequence you want to slow down by moving the left and right sliders.
6. Drag the slider up or down to choose how fast you want the sequence to play.
7. Tap  to watch the result.
8. Tap **SAVE**.

The edited video is saved as a new file. The original video remains unedited.


Trim Videos

While watching a video you've captured, you can trim it to remove unwanted scenes, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Open the video you want to play in full screen.
3. Tap the onscreen controls to pause or resume playback, adjust the volume, and more.



Tip: Tap  to share the video on your home network.

4. To trim the video, tap  > **Edit**.
5. Drag the trim sliders to the part where you want the video to begin and end.





6. Tap  to preview your trimmed video.


7. Tap **SAVE**.

The trimmed video is saved as a new file. The original video remains unedited.

Save a Photo From a Video





It's easy to save a still shot from a video.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. When you see the video you want, tap it to play in full screen.
3. While watching the video, tap  to capture a still shot.

You can also pause the playback and drag the slider to the image you want before tapping .

View a Zoe in Gallery

When you view a group of photos and videos such as in an album, Gallery automatically composes a Zoe. A Zoe is a collection of photos and videos that Gallery has preselected, with added background music and special effects.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.

Note: If you are in Timeline view, you need to go to the  **Events** or  **Year** tab.

3. Tap a tile to open a group of photos and videos.

❖ You'll then see a preview of the Zoe play automatically.

If you want to edit the Zoe in the Zoe app, tap the Zoe tile in portrait view. To learn more about the Zoe app, go to zoe.com/help.






One Gallery

See all your photos and videos in one place. With One Gallery, you can view all the photos and videos that are stored on your phone as well as on favored online services right from the Gallery app on your phone.

What's more, you can easily find similar photos and videos using Image match or by searching with keywords or tags. See [Search for Photos and Videos](#) and [Find Matching Photos](#) for details.

Turn On One Gallery

One Gallery lets you view your Facebook, Flickr, Google Drive, and Dropbox pictures and videos in Gallery.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap  > **General Settings** > **One Gallery**.
3. Tap **NEXT** and then select the online account you want to sign in with.
4. Choose the online services whose photos and videos you want to see in Gallery.
 - ❖ One Gallery will then sync with the accounts.
5. After the accounts have been synced, tap .

You'll then be able to see your online photos and videos in Gallery.

Photo Editor

Make your pictures even better. Photo Editor has an array of editing tools that let you crop, rotate, apply and create photo filters, and much more to your photos.




- To open Photo Editor, tap  >  >  **Photo Editor**.

Basic Photo Editing

Here are some basic editing techniques that you can apply to your photos.

Choose a Photo to Edit






You can select photos to edit from Photo Editor or Gallery.



1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor**.
2. Tap **Gallery** to open an existing photo on your phone, and then browse for the item to edit. Or, tap **Camera** if you want to take a new photo to edit.
 - ❖ A slideout menu appears where you can choose editing options.

Tip: You can also tap  while viewing a photo in full screen from the Gallery app.

Adjust Your Photos

Use the available adjustment tools to crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos.















1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials** >  **TOOLS**.
3. Choose to rotate, crop, flip, or straighten the photo.
4. Tap  and make more adjustments, if needed.

5. Tap  to return to the Essentials screen.
6. Tap  to save changes.

Except for when applying rotation, edited photos are saved as new photos. The original remains unedited.









Draw on a Photo

Scribble on your photos for fun or to highlight an interesting part.

1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Flair** >  **DRAW**.
3. Drag the stroke slider to adjust the stroke thickness.
4. Tap  to open the toolbar, choose a pen type, and then tap  to hide the toolbar.
5. Choose a pen color from the color bar.
6. Draw on the photo. You can tap  >  to switch to full screen view.
7. To undo or redo an action, open the toolbar, and then tap  or . Or, you can use the eraser from the toolbar to remove specific parts of your drawing.
8. Tap  when done.
9. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
10. Tap  to save changes.





The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Apply Photo Filters




1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials**.
3. Tap  **FILTERS**, and then choose one of the available filters.
4. Tap .
5. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
6. Tap  to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Create and Apply a Custom Filter








1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials**.
3. Tap  **FILTERS**, and then scroll to the end of the predefined filters bar.
4. Tap **CUSTOM**.
5. Make changes to the filter by adjusting the controls on exposure, saturation, white balance, and more.
6. If you need to rearrange the order of your settings to achieve a particular effect, you can touch and hold a setting and drag it to a new position.

❖ Rearranging the settings may reset values to the default.

7. Tap .
8. Tap  to return to the Essentials screen.
9. Tap  to save changes.







The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Retouch Photos of People

1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Touch Up**.
3. Choose a facial touch-up to apply, and then customize its settings.
4. Tap .
5. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
6. Tap  to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

To fix red eye:

1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Essentials**.
3. Tap  **RED EYE REMOVAL**, and then tap .
4. Tap  to save changes.


The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.









Edit Continuous Shots

For burst action and group shots, you can use these editing techniques so your photos are always perfect.

Always Smile

Finding it difficult to choose a group shot with the most smiles and the fewest blinks? Retouch a group shot so everyone looks their best in the photo.


Note: This feature is available for burst shots captured with continuous shooting mode. You can identify burst shots by the  icon on the thumbnail.






1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **ALWAYS SMILE**.
 - ❖ You'll see circles around any faces detected in the photo.
3. Select one face at a time and drag it sideways with your finger to select the expression you want.
4. Tap  when done.
5. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
6. Tap  to save changes.


The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

GIF Creator

Create an animated gif that you can quickly upload and share.

Note: This feature is available for burst shots captured with continuous shooting mode. You can identify burst shots by the  icon on the thumbnail.


1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **GIF CREATOR**.
 - ❖ You'll see an animation of the frames.
3. Drag the trim sliders to the part where you want the animated gif to begin and end.
4. Tap .
5. On the next screen, you can choose the direction you want the animation to play, set the speed of the animation, choose which frames you want to include, and more.









6. Tap  when done.
7. Select the file quality of your animation, and then tap **OK**.

The animation is saved as a gif. You can identify a gif by the icon on the thumbnail in Gallery.

Sequence Shot

Hop, skip, or jump. Create a sequence shot to stitch a series of actions into one photo.


Note: This feature is available for burst shots captured with continuous shooting mode. You can identify burst shots by the  icon on the thumbnail.










1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **SEQUENCE SHOT**. You'll see frames that you can combine in one photo.
3. Select the frames that you want to include in the sequence shot.
4. Tap  when done.
5. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
6. Tap  to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Object Removal

Did a pedestrian or passing car ruin your otherwise perfect shot of a famous landmark? Retouch the photo to remove unwanted people or objects.

Note: This feature is available for burst shots captured with continuous shooting mode. You can identify burst shots by the  icon on the thumbnail.

1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **OBJECT REMOVAL**. You'll see frames around areas in the photo where objects have been automatically removed.
3. To retain an object, tap  on its image on the film strip.
4. Tap  when done.
5. Tap , and then tap  to toggle between the before and after photos.
6. Tap  to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Creative Effects

Add creative effects such as shapes, prisms, and elements to your photos.

Shapes

Add some pattern to your photo by adding and blending shapes.



1. Tap > > **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **SHAPES**.
3. Choose a shape to add to your photo, and then do any of the following:
 - Select a shape color by dragging the color slider.
 - Drag the shape to move it.
 - Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape to adjust its size.
 - Touch and hold the shape with two fingers and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
4. Tap to open the toolbar.
5. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .
6. Tap > , and then drag the slider to adjust the shape's opacity.
7. If you want to adjust your photo to blend with the shape, tap to switch from the shape layer to the photo layer.

8. Tap a setting to adjust its values, and then tap >.

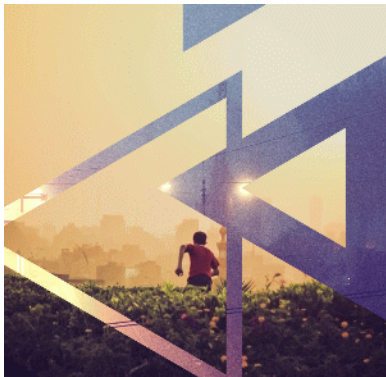


9. Tap ✓ to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.



Photo Shapes


Photo Shapes lets you add a shape to your image and fill it with another photo.





1. Tap > > **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **PHOTOSHAPES**.
3. Choose a second image to be the fill for your selected shape.
4. Choose a shape to add to your photo.
5. Tap to switch to the shape layer. You should see the shape layer icon .
6. Do any of the following:
 - Drag the shape mask to move it.




- Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape mask to adjust its size.
- Touch and hold the shape mask with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
- Tap  to return to the image layer , and then drag your fingers apart or together on the image to adjust the image size inside the mask.

7. Tap  to open the toolbar.


8. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .

9. Tap  > , and then tap a setting to adjust its values.

10. If you want to adjust your photo to blend with the image fill, tap  to switch from the image fill layer to the photo layer.



11. Tap a setting and drag the slider to adjust its values, and then tap .

12. Tap  to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Prismatic

Got a bright and colorful image? Use Prismatic effect for fresh crystal prism patterns.



1. Tap > > **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **PRISMATIC**.
3. Choose a prismatic pattern to apply to your photo.
4. Tap to switch to the shape layer. You should see the shape layer icon .
5. Do any of the following:
 - Drag the shape to move it.
 - Drag your fingers apart or together on the shape to adjust its size.
 - Touch and hold the shape with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate it.
 - Tap to return to the image layer , and then drag your fingers apart or together on the image to adjust its size.
6. Tap to open the toolbar.
7. Tap , adjust the settings for your photo layer, and then tap .
8. Tap to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

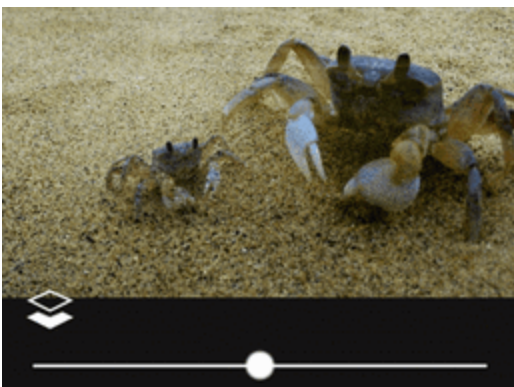
Double Exposure

With Double Exposure, combine and blend two photos and create something surreal.

1. Tap > > **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** > **DOUBLEEXPOSURE**.
3. Choose your second image. This will be your top layer .



4. Do any of the following:
 - Drag the layer to move it.
 - Drag your fingers apart or together on the layer to adjust its size.
5. Tap to open the toolbar.
6. Tap , choose a different blending option for the selected layer, and then tap .
7. Tap > , tap a setting, and then drag the slider to adjust its values.
8. If you want to adjust your background layer to blend with the top layer, tap to switch to the background layer.












9. Tap a setting and drag the slider to adjust its values, and then tap .
10. Tap to save changes.

The edited photo is saved as a new photo. The original photo remains unedited.

Elements

Add animated elements to your photo.







1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **ELEMENTS**.
3. Tap an element type to apply to your photo.
4. Tap  to open the toolbar.
5. Tap , draw an animation path or area for the selected effect, and then tap .
6. Tap  to adjust the animation speed and intensity.
7. Touch and hold an area with two fingers, and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate the animation.
8. When you are satisfied with the result, tap  and choose to save as a photo or video.

Face Fusion

Wonder what you would like if you shared the same features as another person? Face Fusion uses a person's photo and a target face to merge the two photos into one.

To use Face Fusion, be sure that:

- The faces in each photo have to be 100 x 100 pixels or larger in size.
- Facial shots are without glasses and are not covered by hair, a hat, or any other item.
- Subjects should look towards the camera for best results.

1. Tap  >  >  **Photo Editor** and choose the photo you want to edit.
2. In the slideout menu that opens, tap **Effects** >  **FACE FUSION**.

3. Tap **+** and then browse to the photo that you want to merge with.
4. Drag the slider to apply Face Fusion to the image.



5. To choose another target face, just tap the thumbnail of the target person and browse to a new photo.
6. When you are satisfied with the result, tap **✓** and choose to save as a photo or video.

Useful Features




The following topics detail many of your phone's tools and features such as maps and navigation, calendar, clock, social networking apps, music, and more.

NASCAR Mobile

Now you have the ability to get every bit of NASCAR coverage, news, and stats right on your phone.




Install the NASCAR Mobile App on Your Phone

Before you use the NASCAR Mobile app on your phone, you must download and install the app from Google Play.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap the Search icon and search for "nascar mobile".
3. Tap **NASCAR Mobile** from the results list.
4. Tap **INSTALL** or **UPDATE**, and then tap **ACCEPT**.
 - ❖ The app will be downloaded and installed on your phone.
5. When the download has completed, tap **Open**.

- To open the app from the home screen, tap  >  >  **NASCAR Mobile 2014**.

Use the NASCAR Mobile App

1. Tap  >  >  **NASCAR Mobile 2014**.
 - ❖ The NASCAR Mobile app opens.
2. Follow the prompts to customize your app and begin following your favorite racers.

Navigation

Your phone offers a number of location-based navigation programs to help you figure out where you are and get you where you're going.

Enable Location Services on Your Phone




Before using any location-based services, you must enable your phone's location feature. For information about setting your phone's location options, see [Location Settings](#).


HTC Car


Now when you drive, you can easily use your phone to reach your destination, keep you entertained, and help you stay in touch with the people that matter to you. Get easy access to music, maps, navigation, and phone calls with HTC Car.

Important: Using Your Phone While Driving - Talking on or otherwise using your phone while driving (or operating the phone without a hands-free device) is prohibited in some jurisdictions. Laws vary as to specific restrictions. Remember that safety always comes first.

Launch HTC Car

1. HTC Car instantly launches when you mount the phone in the HTC Car Kit (available separately). You can also tap  >  >  **Car**.
2. Swipe up or down to see what you can do in HTC Car.

Tip: When using HTC Car, return to the main screen from any other screen by tapping .

When you remove your phone from HTC Car Kit, HTC Car will automatically exit. You can also manually close HTC Car by tapping  from the main screen.


Use Voice Commands in HTC Car

Use your voice to control HTC Car.

1. In HTC Car, tap the screen with three fingers to activate voice command mode.
2. Do one of the following:
 - **Call someone.** Say "Call [person's name in phonebook]"
 - **Play music.** Say "Play [song title, album, artist name, or genre]"
 - **Play the radio.** Say "Listen to [song title, artist name, or genre]"
 - **Find something on the map.** Say "Find [name of place, address, type of place]"


Find Places Using HTC Car

HTC Car helps you to find your way to where you want to go. Easily find nearby restaurants and more. HTC Car gives you the information you need so you won't get lost.


1. In HTC Car, tap **Navigation**.
2. To search for a place, tap  and enter a location in the search box.
3. To look up a place that you've previously searched for, tap **Previous**.
4. To get directions for an upcoming event in Calendar, tap **Appointments** and tap an upcoming appointment.

Explore What's Around You

With just a few taps, you can find interesting places around you quickly.

1. In HTC Car, tap **Navigation**.
2. Tap a category, for example **Restaurant** or **Parking** to see what's available near you.
3. Tap  to enter your own search keywords.

Play Music in HTC Car

1. In HTC Car, tap **Music**.
2. Swipe left or right to browse by category.
3. Tap  to search your collection.
4. Tap an album, song, or playlist to listen to it.

Tip: You can also play music by tapping **Speak** on the main screen and saying what you want to hear. For example, say "Play Beethoven's 5th".


Make Phone Calls in HTC Car

- Tap **Dialer** to open the dialpad.
- Tap **People** and then browse a category or search by entering a name.
- Tap **Speak** and say "Call" and the person's name. For example, say "Call Jennifer Singer."

Handle Incoming Calls in HTC Car

- If you hear a voice prompt, say "yes" or "no" to answer or decline a call.
- Tap **Answer** or **Decline**.

Customize HTC Car

- To change the default behavior of HTC Car, tap **Settings**.
- To add more apps to HTC Car, tap  and select an app.

Google Maps










Use the Google Maps app to determine your location, find directions, browse local businesses and attractions, rate and review places, and more.

Note: To find your location with Google Maps, you need to enable location sources. For more information on location services, see [Location Setting](#).

Note: The Google Maps application does not cover every country or city.

Get Around Maps

When you open Google Maps, you can easily find your location on the map or check out nearby places by panning and zooming in and out on the map.

1. Tap  >  >  **Maps**.
2. Tap  to show your current location. The blue marker  or  shows your location on the map.
3. Tap  to turn Compass mode on. In Compass mode, the map orients itself depending on the direction you're facing. To exit Compass mode, tap .
4. If you want to see more information overlaid on the map, tap , and then tap a map view such as **Traffic** or **Public transit** to toggle the view on and off.






Navigate the Map

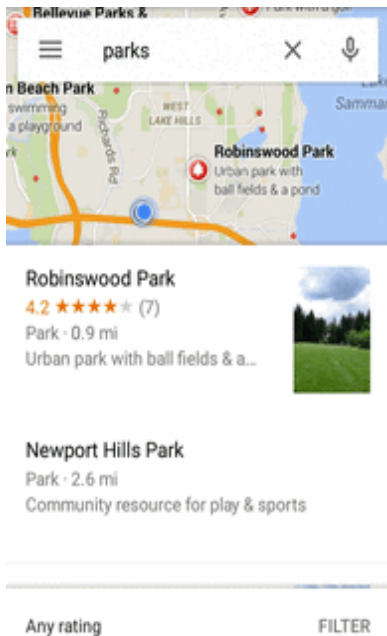
Navigate the map using finger gestures.

- Slide your finger on any direction to pan.
- Double-tap the map or slide two fingers apart over an area to zoom in. To zoom in while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb down.
- Double-tap the map with two fingers or slide two fingers together over an area to zoom out. To zoom out while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb up.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate the map.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then swipe up to see an angled view of the map. Swipe down to return to overhead view.


Search for a Location

In Google Maps, you can search for a location, such as an address or a type of business or establishment (for example, museums).

1. Tap  >  >  **Maps**.
2. Tap the search box and then enter the place you want to search for.
3. Tap  on the keyboard or tap a suggested search item. If there is only one search result, it will be marked with a place marker .







4. If there are multiple search results, they will be indicated by red dots or smart map icons. Swipe up from the bottom to see all of the search results.
5. If available, tap **FILTER** to narrow the search results.
6. Tap a card from the search results to check the address, get directions, see the location in Street View (if available), and more.
7. To check the next or previous location on the search, swipe the info sheet left or right.

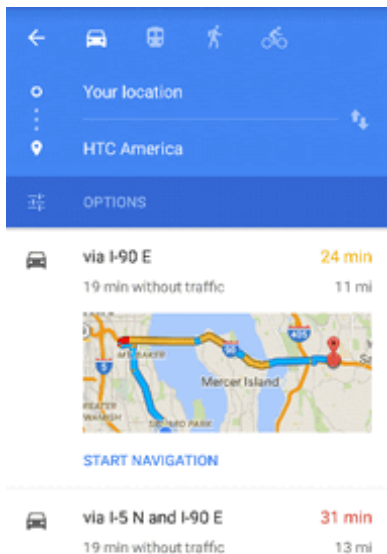
To clear the map and search another location, swipe down the info sheet (if it's expanded), and then tap .

Get Directions

Get detailed directions to your destination. Google Maps provides travel directions by car, public transit, bike, or foot.


1. Tap  >  >  **Maps**.
2. Tap .
3. Choose how you want to get to your destination.
4. Use your current location as starting point, or tap **Your location** to enter your starting point or select a location from your search history.

5. Tap **Choose destination**, and then enter or select your destination.




Note: If you're taking public transit, tap  to set the date and time of travel, or tap **Options** to set your route preferences.

6. Tap a route or transit option to view the directions on the map. You'll also see the travel duration on the info sheet at the bottom of the screen.
7. Tap the info sheet to view the directions in a list.

When you're finished viewing or following the directions, tap  to reset the map. Your destination is automatically saved in the Google Maps history.

Get Help with Google Maps

Get help and more information about Maps.

- In Google Maps, tap  > **Help**. The Web browser opens and takes you to the Google Maps help site.







Scout

Scout® by Telenav is a daily personal navigator that helps you get where you're going. It lets you see and hear turn-by-turn directions and it can provide important, personalized information about traffic and alternate routes.




Note: To find your location, you need to enable location sources. To learn how, see [Location Setting](#).

Install the Scout App on Your Phone

Before you use Scout on your phone, you must download and install the app from the Google Play Store app.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  and search for "scout".
3. Tap **Scout GPS Maps, Meetup & Chat** from the results list.
4. Tap **INSTALL** or **UPDATE** and then tap **ACCEPT**.
5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, tap  >  **Scout**.





Use Scout as Your Personal Navigator

1. Tap  >  >  **Scout**.
 - ❖ The Scout app will open.
 - If prompted, accept the terms of use before continuing.
2. Follow screen instructions to continue.




Hangouts

Hangouts is Google's instant messaging service. Use to communicate with other Hangout users, and also use video calling. Log in to your Google Account beforehand (see [Google Account](#)).

Using Hangouts

1. Tap  >  >  **Hangouts**.
 - ❖ The Hangouts app will open.
2. Type a name, email, number, or circle, or select a contact from the list.
3. Type a message or tap  to start a video chat.
 - ❖ A chat window or a video chat window opens.
 - Each time text is entered, the corresponding friend appears.
 - If a friend is not in a Hangout, you will see a message. Tap **INVITE** to invite them to join the Hangout.





Hangouts Operations

- **Ending a Chat:** In the Hangouts window, flick the chat from left to right.
- **Ending a Video Chat:** In the video chat window, tap .
- **Disabling Chat History:** If you don't want to keep chat history, in the chat window, tap  > **Turn history off**.
- **Delete Chat History:** To delete all your chat history, in the chat window, tap  > **Delete** > **DELETE**.

Note: You can use Hangouts as your phone's default messaging app, or as a standalone IM app. If you set Hangouts as the default messaging app, the Messages app will be disabled. For more information, see [More Wireless & Network Settings](#).

Calculator

Your phone's convenient built-in calculator lets you perform basic mathematical equations.



1. Tap  >  >  **Calculator**.
2. Enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys.
3. Do any of the following:
 - Turn your phone sideways to switch to a scientific calculator, and then enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys. The scientific calculator lets you perform more complex calculations with square root, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.
 - Tap **DEL** to remove one digit at a time. Touch and hold **DEL** to delete the entire number.
4. Tap  for the result.

Calendar

Use Calendar to create and manage events, meetings, and appointments. Your Calendar helps organize your time and reminds you of important events. Depending on your synchronization settings, your phone's Calendar stays in sync with your Calendar on the Web, Exchange ActiveSync calendar, Google Calendar, and Outlook calendar.

In order to sync with your Google calendar, you must sign in to your Google Account on your phone. See [Google Account](#).

Calendar Operations

- **View Today's Calendar:** From the Calendar, tap .
- **Change Calendar View:** From the Calendar, tap  and then tap **Month**, **Week**, **Day**, **Agenda**, or **Invites** to change the current view.
- **View Next/Previous Month (Month View):** From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- **View Next/Previous Week (Week View):** From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- **View Next/Previous Day (Day View):** From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.
- **View the Next/Previous Time Period (Day/Week View):** From the Calendar, flick the screen left or right.







Select a Calendar


- If you have more than one calendar, select a calendar in which to add events:
 - Select **My Calendar** to create an event that will appear only on your phone.
 - Select your Google Account to create a Google Calendar event. If you have several Google Calendars on the Web, select one in which to add your event.
 - You can create multiple Google Calendars only in Google Calendar on the Web. After creating them in Google Calendar on the Web, you'll be able to see them in the Calendar application on your phone. For more information about creating and managing multiple Google Calendars, visit the Google website: calendar.google.com.
 - If you have synchronized your phone with an Exchange ActiveSync account or Outlook on your computer, you can also select these calendars.
 - Select **PC Sync** to create an Outlook Calendar event to sync with your computer.
- Select **Exchange** to create an Exchange ActiveSync calendar event.

Schedule or Edit an Event

You can create or edit events on your phone, and also sync events with your Google or Exchange ActiveSync calendars.

Note: Editing events is not supported for all accounts.

1. Tap  >  >  **Calendar**.
2. On any Calendar view, do one of the following:
 - **Create an event.** Tap . Tap , and then select the calendar you will add the event to.
 - **Edit an event.** View an event, and then tap .


3. Enter and set the event details.
4. To invite from your Google or Exchange ActiveSync account, tap .
5. Tap **SAVE**. Or if you've invited people to the event, tap **SEND** or **SEND UPDATE**.






Check Your Schedule for an Event

Avoid juggling multiple meetings at the same time. In Calendar, you can check your appointments to see if a new event would conflict with your schedule.

1. When creating or editing an event, tap **Check calendar**.
2. Touch and hold the event box, and then drag it to an available time slot.
3. Drag the top and bottom nodes to adjust the event's time duration. You'll see a message if there are conflicts with other scheduled events.
4. Tap **Done** to return to the event screen, and then save your event.






View Calendar Events

You can display the Calendar in daily, weekly, monthly, or agenda view. To change the Calendar view, tap  and then tap **Year**, **Month**, **Week**, **Day**, or **Agenda**.

1. Tap  >  >  **Calendar**.
 - ❖ The Calendar app opens.
2. Tap a date and then tap an event.
 - ❖ The event details appear.
 - In event details, tap  to edit the event.
 - In event details, tap  > **Delete event** and follow the prompts.

Choose Which Calendar to Show



You have the option to show only the calendars that you frequently use. You can also show or hide tasks that you've created in your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Calendar**.
2. Tap  > **Accounts (All calendars)** or **Accounts (Multi-calendar)**.
3. Select or clear an account you wish to show or hide. If you have multiple calendars under an online account, tap  to select the items to include.

Note: Calendars are synced on your phone, even if they are hidden.





Calendar Events Not Showing?


If you can't find events from your email accounts or social networks in Calendar, check whether the Calendar sync is turned on in Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Tap an account type. If multiple accounts are supported (such as Exchange ActiveSync), tap the account you want to sync.
3. Select **Calendar**, and then tap  > **Sync now**.

Share an Event (vCalendar)

You can share a calendar event as a vCalendar using Bluetooth or by sending it as a file attachment with your email or message.





1. Tap  >  >  **Calendar**.
2. Do one of the following:
 - While viewing an event, tap  > **Share via**.
 - In day, agenda or week view, touch and hold an event and then tap **Share via**.
3. Choose how you want to send the event.


Tip: You can also forward accepted meeting invitations from your Exchange ActiveSync calendar. While viewing an event, tap  > **Forward**. Compose your email message, and then send it.

Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation

Switch to the Invites view to see meeting invitations which you have not yet accepted or declined.


Note: You must set up an Exchange ActiveSync account to receive meeting invitations in Calendar.

1. Tap  >  >  **Calendar**.
2. Tap  > **Invites**, and then tap a meeting invitation.
3. Accept, decline, or tentatively accept the invitation, or propose a new time.

Tip: Tap  to choose from more options, such as moving the invitation to a folder.


If you need to cancel an accepted meeting invitation or propose a new time, view the event details in Calendar, and then tap **RESPONSE**.

Dismiss or Snooze Reminders

If you have set at least one reminder for an event, the upcoming event icon  will appear in the notifications area of the status bar to remind you.

1. Open the Notifications panel.
2. If the notification shows that there are multiple reminders, tap it to see all the reminders. You can then choose to snooze or dismiss them.
3. If you see a single event notification, spread your two fingers on the notification to expand it. You can then:
 - Tap **SNOOZE** or **DISMISS**. Or drag the notification left or right to dismiss it.
 - Tap **SEND MAIL** to send a quick response to the meeting attendees.

Tip: To edit the preset quick responses or add your own, open Calendar, and then tap  > **Settings** > **Quick response**.

If you don't want to dismiss or snooze the calendar reminders, tap  from the Notifications panel to keep them pending in the notifications area of the status bar.

Clock





Your phone has a clock app that lets you set alarms, view time in time zones around the world, use a stopwatch, set a timer, and use your phone as a desk clock.

Check the Time

You can check the phone any time on your phone. The current time displays in the upper right corner of the status bar. Many widgets and lock screens also display the time and provide options for how time is displayed.

Set the Date and Time Manually





You can change your date and time.

1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  >  >  **Clock**.
2. On the **WORLD CLOCK** tab, tap  > **Local time settings**.
3. Clear **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone**, and then set the time zone, date, and time as required.

Tip: To display military time, choose the **Use 24-hour format** option.


Set an Alarm

You can set up one or more alarms.

1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  >  >  **Clock**.
2. On the **ALARMS** tab, select the check button of an alarm and then tap that alarm.
3. Under Set alarm, use the scroll wheels to set the alarm time.
4. If you want the alarm for multiple days, tap **Repeat**.
5. Tap **DONE**.
6. If you need to set more than three alarms, tap .

Tip: To turn off an alarm, clear the check box of that alarm.

Phone at Alarm Time





- At the set alarm time, the phone sounds the alarm and/or vibrates.
- Stopping an alarm: When the alarm sounds, drag  up to dismiss it.

Additional Clock Features

Your phone's clock app provides additional useful features including world clock, stopwatch, and timer functions.




World Clock

The world clock lets you keep track of the current time in multiple cities around the globe.

1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  >  >  **Clock**.
2. Swipe to the **WORLD CLOCK** tab.
3. Tap  and select a city.
4. Repeat to add multiple cities.




Stopwatch

The stopwatch lets you time events down to the hundredth of a second.

1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  >  >  **Clock**.
2. Swipe to the **STOPWATCH** tab.
3. Tap **START** to begin timing.
4. Tap **STOP** to stop timing.
 - Additional options include **LAP** to keep track of laps and **RESET** to continue timing.






Timer

The timer provides a countdown timer for up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds.

1. Tap the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or tap  >  >  **Clock**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMER** tab.
3. Use the scroll wheels to set the length of the time.
4. Tap **START** to begin the timer.

Check the Weather

Use the Weather app and widget to check the current weather and weather forecasts for the next few days. In addition to your current location, you can view weather forecasts for other cities around the globe.

1. Tap  >  >  **Weather**. You'll see the weather from different cities, including where you are.
2. Tap a city to view weather information.
3. Swipe to the **HOURLY** and **FORECAST** tabs to view the forecasts in your selected location.
4. To check the weather in other cities, tap  , and then select the city you want.
5. To add more cities, tap  and then enter the location.





Your settings in the Weather app also control the weather information that is shown in the Clock and Calendar apps.



Twitter

Tweet (post messages) and view other people's tweets on Twitter. Login may be required to use Twitter. For details on Twitter, visit twitter.com.

Install the Twitter App on Your Phone




Before you can use Twitter on your phone, you have to download and install the app from Google Play.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  and search for "twitter".
3. Tap **Twitter** from the results list.
4. Tap **INSTALL**, and then tap **ACCEPT**.

5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, tap  >  **Twitter**.

Tweet on Twitter

Read Twitter feeds, follow your friends, and tweet your own updates right from your phone.







1. Tap  >  >  **Twitter**.
 - ❖ The Twitter app launches.
 - If this is the first time you've used Twitter on your phone, tap **Log in** to sign in to an existing account, or tap **Sign up** to set up a new Twitter account.
2. Tap the "What's happening?" text box, type a tweet, and tap **TWEET**.
 - ❖ The tweet is sent and appears on your Twitter feed.

Facebook

Post updates, read what your friends are up to, upload pictures and check-ins, and more with on-the-go Facebook access.

Install the Facebook App on Your Phone

Before you use Facebook on your phone, you must download and install the app from the Google Play Store app.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  and search for "facebook".
3. Tap **Facebook** from the results list.
4. Tap **INSTALL**, and then tap **ACCEPT**.
5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, tap  >  **Facebook**.

Use Facebook

Once you've downloaded the app and signed in, you can post and read updates, upload pictures, tag locations, and more, all from your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Facebook**.





❖ The Facebook app launches.


- If this is the first time you've used Facebook on your phone, enter your Facebook ID and password and tap **LOG IN** to sign in to an existing account, or tap **Sign Up for Facebook** to set up a new Facebook account.
2. Tap **STATUS** and type an update, tap **PHOTO** and upload a picture from the gallery, tap **CHECK IN** to share your location, "Like" and comment on friends' posts, and more.

YouTube





View videos uploaded to YouTube and upload your own videos to your YouTube account.



Watch YouTube Videos


1. Tap  >  >  YouTube.
2. Browse or search for a video.
3. Tap the one you want to watch.
4. While watching a video, you can:
 - Turn the phone sideways to watch the video in full screen.
 - Tap the video screen to pause, resume playback, or drag the slider to jump to a different part of the video.
 - Scroll down the video information panel to see the description, related videos, or comments from other viewers.
 - Browse other videos by minimizing the video screen. Tap  or drag the video screen down to minimize. To close the video thumbnail, swipe it left or right.

Tip: If you want to watch the video at a later time, tap , and then tap **Watch later**. You can access the video again from your account profile's Watch Later list.





Search for Videos

1. Tap  >  >  YouTube.
2. Tap .
3. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for. As you type, matching items are shown as a list.

Tip: Tap  to enter it in the search box. New suggestions appear and you can enter more text or tap  beside a subsequent suggestion to quickly refine your search.

4. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, tap the item.
5. To show results which were just recently posted. Tap , tap **All time**, and then select a time period you want.
6. Scroll through the results and tap a video to watch it.





Share a Video Link

1. Tap  >  >  YouTube
2. Tap a video or search for a video and then tap it.
3. Tap the video screen, and then tap .
4. Choose how you want to share the video link from the available options.


Create Video Playlists


Organize your favorite videos into playlists and watch them in the YouTube app.

Note: Make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account.

1. Tap  >  >  YouTube.
2. Browse or search for a video.
3. Tap  next to the video title, and then tap **Add to > New playlist**.
4. Enter the playlist name, and then tap **OK**.

Tip: If you don't want to share the video playlist, select **Private** before you tap **OK**.

5. To add another video to your playlist, browse or search for the video, and then tap  next to the video title.
6. Tap **Add to** and then tap the playlist name.

To access and watch your video playlists, minimize the video screen, and then tap  to open the slideout menu. Tap the playlist you want.




Music Apps and Sound Enhancements

Your phone lets you discover, download, and listen to your favorite music through a variety of music apps. You can use Music, Google Play Music, or the Sprint Music app.






Listen to Music

Enjoy your favorite songs on your phone using the Music application.

Note: When you open the Music app for the first time, you'll be asked if you would like to automatically download related content, such as album covers and artist photos, to your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Swipe to the different tabs to browse by category.
3. Tap a song to play.
4. Tap the onscreen icons to control music playback, repeat songs and more.



- Tap and drag your finger across the progress bar  to jump to any part of the song.
- Tap  to turn shuffle on or off. (Shuffle is off when button is gray.)
- Tap  to cycle through the repeat modes: repeat all songs, repeat current song, and don't repeat.
- Tap  to play your music on a DLNA[®] compliant TV or audio system, HTC Media Link HD, or stereo Bluetooth device.
- Tap  to minimize the Now playing screen to continue browsing your music collection.
- Press the **Volume Up** or **Volume Down** button to adjust the playback volume.

Note: When you're listening to music and the screen display turns off, press the Power/Lock button to turn the screen back on and control the music playback directly on the lock screen.







Tip: You can also control music playback right from the Notifications panel.

Create and Work with Playlists

Personalize your music experience by creating music playlists. Make a playlist containing just your favorite songs or create one to match your mood for the day.




Create Playlists

You can make as many playlists as you like on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Tap  and then enter a playlist name.
4. To add songs, tap  beside the title text box, browse your music collection, and then tap a song to add. Repeat this step to add more songs.
5. You can also:
 - **Rearrange songs.** Touch and hold  next to the song title you want to move and then drag it to its new position.
 - **Delete songs.** Select the songs you want to remove from the playlist.
 - **Change playlist name.** Enter a new name for the playlist in the title text box.
6. Tap **SAVE**.

To edit a playlist you've created, swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab on the Music app's main screen. Tap a playlist, and then tap  > **Edit playlist**.




Play the Songs in a Playlist

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Tap a playlist, and then tap the song you want to play first.
 - ❖ The song starts playing on the **NOW PLAYING** tab.

Delete Your Playlists

Follow these steps to delete playlists that you no longer use.


Note: The Recently played and the Recently added playlists can't be deleted.

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.

3. Touch and hold the playlist you want to delete, and then tap **Delete playlist**.
4. To remove several playlists, tap  > **Delete playlists**.

Add a Song to the Queue





While playing a song, you can also browse other tracks stored on your phone. Add a song or an album to the queue so it plays when the current playlist has finished playing.


1. While a song is playing, browse for other tracks.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Browse for the album or playlist that you want, touch and hold it, and then tap **Add to queue**.
 - Browse for an artist or song, and then tap  > **Add to queue**.

The songs you've added appear on the **QUEUE** tab.

Update Album Covers and Artist Photos





Note: To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Tap  > **Update artist photos** or **Update album art**.

If you want your phone to automatically check and update your music collection, tap  on the Music app's main screen, and then tap **Settings**. Select **Album art** and **Artist photos**.

Set a Song as a Ringtone

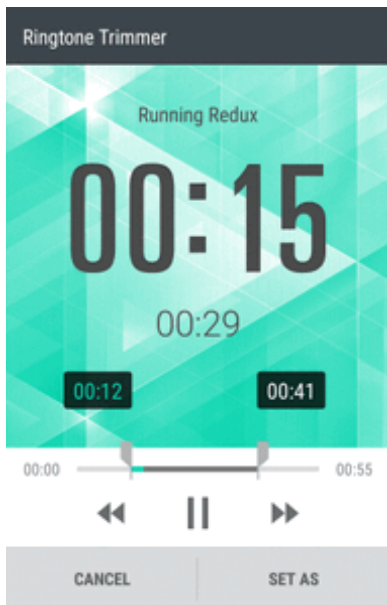
Pick a song from your Music library and set it as your ringtone or as ringtone for a favorite contact.


1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Play the song that you want to set as a ringtone.
3. Tap  > **Set as ringtone**.
4. Tap **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**. If you select **Contact ringtone**, choose the contacts you want to associate the ringtone with.


Trim an MP3 Ringtone

Use the Music app's ringtone trimmer if you want to set only a part of the song as ringtone.

1. When you find the song that you want, tap  > **Set as ringtone** > **Trim the ringtone**.



2. Drag the trim sliders  to the part where you want the ringtone to begin and end. For a more precise trimming, tap the left or right arrow buttons. Time markers indicate where you are on the song.
3. When you're done trimming, tap **SET AS**.
4. Choose whether to set your trimmed song as your **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**.

Note: You can see your new ringtone in the phone settings. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Sound & notification** > **Ringtone**.




Search for Lyrics, Music Videos, and More

Take your music entertainment to a whole new level with lyrics, music videos, artists' information, and visualizations.



View Song Lyrics

Sing along with your favorite music tracks. Your phone gives your music an extra kick with song lyrics and cool music visualizations.

Note: To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

1. Tap  >  >  **Music**.
2. Browse to the song you want to play and tap it.
3. Swipe to the **VISUALIZER** tab to view the lyrics. Song lyrics appear onscreen if content has been successfully downloaded.

Tip: Want a different visual for your music? Tap  > **Scene** and select a scene. If you want the scene to change for every song, select **Random**.

4. Tap the screen to display the lyrics in full screen.
5. To jump to another part of the song, tap the screen to make the progress bar appear. Tap and drag your finger across the progress bar, or touch and hold  or .

Find Music Videos on YouTube

It's easy to find music videos of the song you're listening to on YouTube.

- On the **NOW PLAYING** tab, tap  > **Search** > **YouTube**.

Google Play Music App






The Google Play Music app lets you browse, shop, and play back songs purchased from Google Play as well as songs you have loaded from your own music library. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Play Music library and instantly ready to play via streaming or download.

For more information about Google Play Music, visit play.google.com/about/music.

Note: For information about loading music onto your phone, see [Transfer Files Between Your Phone and a Computer](#).

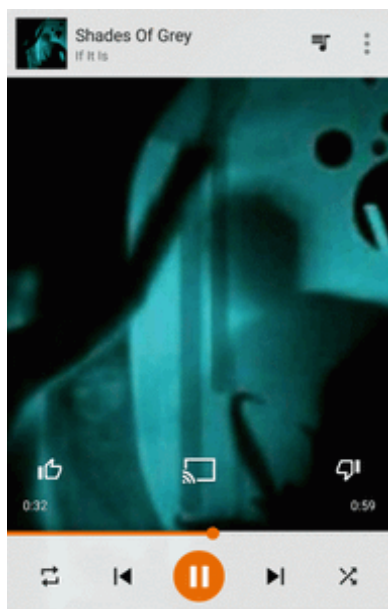
Play Music with Google Play

Use the Google Play Music app to listen to all your music on your phone. Check the Google Play Music help for compatible music file formats.

1. Tap  >  >  **Play Music**.
2. Tap  > **My Library**.
3. Flick the screen left or right to select a library category such as **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS**.
4. Tap an item from the category window and then tap a song.
 The song begins playing.

Google Play Music Screen Layout

The following diagram outlines the main features of the Play Music app player screen.



Create Playlists in Google Play Music

Organize music into playlists to fit every occasion.







1. Tap > > **Play Music**.
2. Tap > **My Library**.
3. Flick the screen left or right to select a library category such as **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS**.
4. Tap an item from the category window and then tap a song.
 - ❖ The song begins playing.
5. Tap > **Add to playlist**
6. Select whether you want to add the song to a new playlist or to an existing playlist.
7. Follow screen instructions to proceed.

Sprint Music Plus







With Sprint Music Plus and the Music Store, Ringtones Store, and Ringbacks, you can purchase, download, and play music, ringtones, and ringback tones for your phone.

Install the Sprint Music Plus App on Your Phone

Before you use Sprint Music Plus on your phone, you must download and install the app from the Google Play Store app.





1. Tap  >  >  **Play Store**.
2. Tap  and search for "sprint music plus".
3. Tap **Sprint Music Plus** from the results list.
4. Tap **INSTALL**, and then tap **ACCEPT**.
5. When the download has completed, tap **OPEN**.
 - To open the app from the Home screen, tap  >  **Sprint Music Plus**.

Access Sprint Music Plus

1. Tap  >  >  **Sprint Music Plus**.
 - The first time you use the app, tap **Accept** to agree to the Premium Services Terms of Use.
2. Tap a store option from the main page (**Ringbacks Store**, **Music Store**, or **Ringtones Store**), or tap  > **Music** (under **Library**) to access your music.
3. Tap the onscreen navigation tools to skip ahead or rewind. Tap  at any time to see additional options.
 - For more information, tap  > **Settings** > **About** or **Help**.

Purchase and Download Music from the Sprint Music Plus Store

From the Sprint Music Plus Store, you can shop for songs to purchase and download to your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Sprint Music Plus** > **Music Store**.
 - ❖ The app will open and display the Music Store.
2. Enter a song or artist in the search field or browse through options in the tabs in the center of the screen.
3. Tap a song to select it.
 - ❖ The song information screen is displayed.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to preview or purchase the song. Tap  at any time to display the Sprint Music Plus menu.




Tip: For ringtones or ringback tones, tap **Ringtones Store** or **Ringbacks** from the Sprint Music Plus main menu.

HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio

Hear what you've been missing. HTC BoomSound™ gives you a rich, authentic sound experience, whether you're listening to music, watching a video, or playing a game.

Toggle Modes in HTC BoomSound




Turn on HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio™ in Settings and experience a whole new level of mobile audio.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio** to toggle between Theatre mode or Music mode.

Note: HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio is not available over HDMI, Bluetooth, Miracast™, or USB audio out.

Use HTC BoomSound with Headphones

Turn on HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio and put on your headphones to enjoy refined audio details in a most personal way.

1. Plug your headphones into the headphone jack.
2. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
3. Tap the **HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio** ON/OFF switch.
4. Tap **HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio**, select an option from the Choose your headphones screen, and tap **APPLY**.

❖ Your phone remembers the headphone profile you chose so you don't have to select it again next time.

Note: HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio is not available over HDMI, Bluetooth, Miracast, or USB audio out.

Google Wallet

You must have a Google Wallet account associated with your Google Account to purchase items from the Google Play Store app.

To create a Google Wallet account, do one of the following:

- On your computer, go to google.com/wallet to create a Google Wallet account.
- or —
- The first time you use your phone to buy an item from Google Play, you're prompted to enter your billing information to set up a Google Wallet account.

Warning: When you've used Google Wallet once to purchase an application from the Google Play Store app, the phone remembers your password, so you don't need to enter it the next time. For this reason, you should secure your phone to prevent others from using it without your permission. (For more information, see [Screen Lock Settings](#).)

Kid Mode

Use Kid Mode to let your kids have fun and learn on your phone without them accessing anything they shouldn't. While your kids enjoy a huge collection of games, videos, and storybooks, you can also check on their learning progress.

- To learn more about Kid Mode, visit zoodles.com.

Create a Child Profile

You can add several child profiles to customize the learning experience for each of your kids.

1. Tap  >  >  **Kid Mode**.

❖ The first time you use Kid Mode, you need to create or sign in to your account.

2. If prompted, follow the instructions on the screen to set a child lock.
3. Fill out the profile information, and then tap **Create profile**.
4. Tap **Finish**, or tap **Add a child** to create a another profile.

Explore Kid Mode

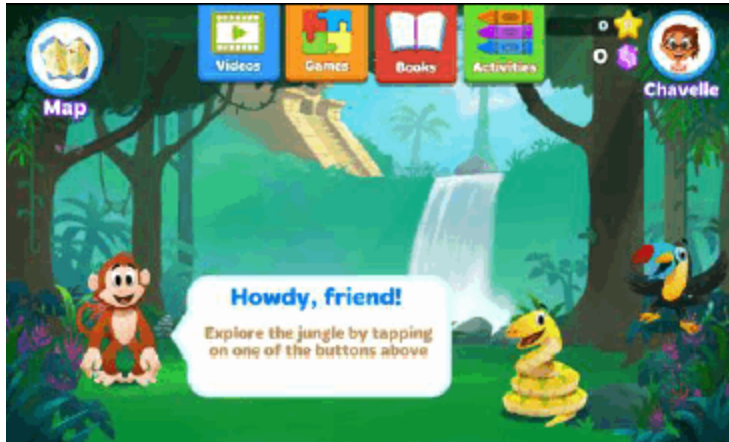
Enjoy the different child-friendly activities in Kid Mode.

1. Tap  >  >  **Kid Mode**.

Tip: To easily switch to Kid Mode, you can also press and hold the **Power/Lock** button, and then tap **Kid Mode**.

2. Tap a child profile.
3. To begin exploring Kid Mode, tap Jungle.

4. Tap the icons to access games and apps, record storybook readings, and more.



5. To exit the playground and return to the main screen, tap **Map** > **Profiles**.

Parent Dashboard

The Parent Dashboard is where you can change the app settings, select learning subjects to promote, and more.

1. Tap > > **Kid Mode**.
2. Tap **Parent Dashboard**.
3. Tap **Continue To Dashboard**.
4. Confirm your action by entering the required information.
5. Tap an option to change the settings or to review your child's activities on the app.

Promote Subjects For Your Child

Choose the learning subjects that you want your kids to focus on, even as they have fun in Kid Mode.

1. Tap > > **Kid Mode**.
2. Tap **Parent Dashboard**.
3. Tap **Controls**.
4. On the Promote Subjects screen, drag the sliders of the different learning subjects to increase or decrease the related apps, games, and videos shown to your child.

Check Your Child's Progress

1. Tap > > **Kid Mode**.
2. Tap **Parent Dashboard**.

3. Tap **Overview**.

4. Tap  until you see details about your child's overall progress and time spent in each subject.

If you've upgraded to a premium plan, tap **Assessment** for more information on your child's learning goals.

Set Child-accessible Apps in Kid Mode

When in Kid Mode, you can choose which apps on HTC One M9 your child will have access to.


1. Tap  >  >  **Kid Mode**.

2. Tap **Parent Dashboard**.

3. Tap **Controls**.


4. Tap  until you get to the Add your apps screen.

❖ You'll see a list of apps on your phone.

5. Tap  next to the app that you want your child to be able to use in Kid Mode.

Allow Incoming Calls While in Kid Mode

Want to receive or block incoming calls while in Kid Mode?

1. Tap  >  >  **Kid Mode**.


2. Tap **Parent Dashboard**.

3. Tap  to open the slide-out menu.

4. Tap **Settings > Device**.

5. Tap , and then select or clear the **Allow Incoming Calls** option.

Close Kid Mode

On the Zoodles® main screen, tap  and then confirm your action by entering the required information.





Scribble

Make a page for your digital scrapbook or create interesting photos to share on your blog or social network. Use the Scribble app to get artistic and combine photos, text, and illustrations in a note.



With several templates to choose from, you can even create lists or track your budget. Have a greeting card ready and link it to your friend's birthday in Calendar to send in a few taps.

Compose a Note








Create notes and add images, stickers and more to it.

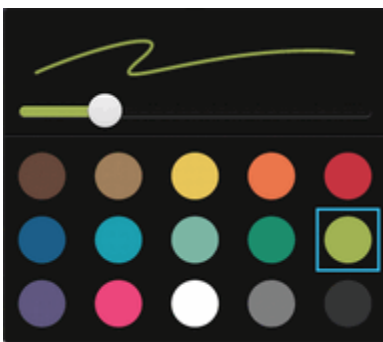
1. Tap  >  >  **Scribble**.
2. Choose a template when you're prompted. Or tap .
3. In the box that says **Title text here**, type your note title.
4. Use the editing tools to enter text, draw figures, record audio, and more.



5. Insert images such as photos and webpage thumbnails.
6. Touch and hold an image to move, resize, or delete it. You can also use two fingers to rotate an image.
7. Tap  for other options, such as changing the template, linking the note to an event, and more.
8. Tap  to save the note.

Insert Images and Illustrations in a Note

1. Tap  >  >  **Scribble**.
2. While composing a note:
 - Tap  to take a photo or tap  > **Insert picture** to select an image from Gallery.
 - Tap  to draw or tap  to write text. You can change the pen characteristics.



- Touch  to insert a sticker.








- To insert a Web page thumbnail, tap  > **Web content**, and then in the browser, go to the Web page that you want to import. Tap  > **Share** > **Scribble**.

Create a Note for a Photo Blog

Your photos tell the best story. Group photos into a note and easily share it on your photo blog or a social network. You can make your note more entertaining by including photo collages, stickers, and more.



Note: If you're inserting a collage, first group the photos in the same event or album in Gallery.

1. Tap  >  >  **Scribble**.
2. Tap  and choose the photo blog template.
3. Tap  to capture a photo or select photos in Gallery and group them in a collage.



If inserting a collage, touch and hold the collage and then select a layout. You can also:

- Touch and hold, and then drag around a photo within the frame to put the subject in the center of the frame.
- Touch and hold, and then drag a photo over another to re-arrange them.
- Slide two fingers apart to zoom in on a photo, or slide two fingers together to zoom out.
- Tap another layout to change the current layout.







4. Tap the area above the date, and then use the editing tools to insert text and illustrations.
5. Tap  on the left to add another page.
6. Tap  to save the note.

Note: To delete a page, touch and hold a collage or photo, and then tap **Delete**.

Note: If you share the note as an image, all the pages will be contained in one .JPG file.





Group Notes Into a Notebook

Tidy up your notes by organizing them into notebooks.

1. Tap  >  >  **Scribble**.
2. Do any of the following:
 - To group notes into a new notebook, tap  > **Group**.
 - To group notes into an existing notebook, tap  > **Move to**.
 - To create a new notebook, swipe to the **NOTEBOOKS** tab, and tap .

Publish and Share a Note

Upload and share your creative work on the Web and get your own Scribble home page.

1. Tap  >  >  **Scribble**.
2. Open a note and tap .
3. Tap **Share Article**.
4. Choose an account and type a description or tag your note.
5. Make sure that **Share your post** is selected.
6. Under **SHARE TO**, tap where you also want to share the link that will be created. You'll be prompted to complete the action in the apps you selected.
7. Tap **DONE**.

To view notes you've shared, swipe to the **SHARE** tab on the Scribble main screen. Or while viewing the Web link for any of your notes, tap **Home**, and then tap **Menu** to see or search your recent posts.

Online Storage and File Management

Save your files online by setting up online storages and organize your files using File Manager.

Google Drive




Store your photos, documents, and other files on Google Drive to access them on your phone, your computer, and your other mobile devices. On your phone, just use your Google Account to sign in to your Google Drive storage.


You can then:

- Use Gallery to upload your captured photos to Google Drive.
- Share a link to your Google Drive files by email.
- View and edit Office documents that are stored in Google Drive. After creating new Office documents, you can also save them to Google Drive.
- View PDFs that are stored in Google Drive. You can also export Office documents as PDFs to Google Drive.
- Check your available Google Drive storage space in Settings.
- Back up your phone to Google Drive, so you can easily restore your backup to another HTC phone next time.
- Use the Google Drive app to manage your online storage.

Activate Your Free Google Drive Storage

Use up to 115GB of free Google Drive storage. In addition to the default storage that you get from Google Drive, your phone features an additional 100GB of online storage free for two years. Sign in to your Google Account on your HTC phone (and not from your computer or other non-HTC phones) to claim this offer.

1. Tap  >  >  **Drive**. If this app is not preloaded on your phone, you can download it from Google Play.
2. If this is your first time to open the Drive app, walk through the product tour until you see the additional storage offer.

If you've opened this app before and currently don't see the screen for redeeming the offer, tap  > **Settings** > **Product Tour** to walk through the product tour.

3. On the screen that shows the additional storage offer, tap **Redeem**. Or to claim the offer at a later time, tap **Offer Details** and check up to when you can redeem the offer.

❖ The additional storage will then be added to your account.

4. Follow the onscreen prompts to learn the things you can do with Google Drive.

Note: Additional terms and requirements may apply (including a subscription fee) after your two-year trial expires. For details, refer to the terms and conditions on the Google Drive support site support.google.com.


Note: The Drive app is owned by Google and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

Note: Uploading files requires you have the Drive app installed on your phone. If this app is not preloaded, you can download and install it from Google Play.

Check Your Google Drive Storage Space

In Settings, you can check your available Google Drive storage space.






Note: Before your Google Drive storage info appears in Settings, you need to access your Google Drive from an HTC app first. For example, use the Mail app to share a link to your Google Drive file.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Storage**.
2. Under Online storage, you'll see your Google Drive storage space.

From time to time, check back on how much online storage space you still have before you upload more content.

Upload Your Photos and Videos to Google Drive

Use Gallery to upload your photos and videos to Google Drive.

1. Tap  >  >  **Gallery**.
2. Tap , and then choose how you want to view your photos and videos.
3. Tap an album or event that contains the photos and videos you want to share.
4. Tap .
5. From the selection menu, tap **Drive**.
6. Select the photos and videos you want to upload, and then tap **NEXT**.
7. Choose or create a folder in Google Drive.
8. Tap **OK** to upload.

HTC Sync Manager

With HTC Sync Manager, enjoy the same media whether you're at your computer or on the move. Use it also to store your same contacts, important documents, and other data on both your phone and your computer.

HTC Sync Manager supports a computer running a Windows or Mac OS operating system.

Here are the things you can do with HTC Sync Manager.

- **View and manage media on your computer**
 - Browse and manage music, photos, and videos that are on your computer and your phone.

- Import iTunes and Windows Media® Player playlists from your computer to HTC Sync Manager.
- Play music, videos, and playlists using the built-in player.
- **Transfer content**
 - Transfer iPhone photos, text messages, contacts, and more to your HTC phone. You can also find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.
 - Import all music, photos, and videos from your HTC phone to your computer.
 - Copy selected music, photos, or videos from your computer to your phone.
 - Import documents from your computer to your phone.
- **Back up and restore.** Back up your HTC phone to your computer so you can easily restore your backup to the same phone or to another phone.
- **Sync playlists and data.** Sync music playlists and data such as contacts, calendar, and Web bookmarks between your phone and your computer.

Install HTC Sync Manager on a Windows Computer

Follow the steps below to install HTC Sync Manager on your computer.

Important: You can install HTC Sync Manager on Windows XP or later versions. To install it on a Mac computer, you need Mac OS 10.6 or later versions.

Important: If you have problem with installing HTC Sync Manager, close all your running programs and reinstall. If the problem persists, temporarily disable your anti-virus program and try installing again.

1. Download the HTC Sync Manager installer from htc.com/hsm.
2. Launch the installer and follow the onscreen instructions.
3. Connect your phone to your computer using the supplied USB cable. HTC Sync Manager opens.

Important: If you disabled your anti-virus program, make sure to turn it back on after installing HTC Sync Manager.


Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone

With HTC Sync Manager, easily transfer iPhone content such as contacts, messages, wallpaper, camera photos, and more to your HTC phone. If you're using an HTC phone that has HTC Sense 6, HTC Sync Manager also enables your phone to find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.

Note: You need to use iTunes 9.0 or later to back up your iPhone content first to your computer.

1. Connect your iPhone and your HTC phone to your computer.
2. In HTC Sync Manager, click **Home > Transfer & Backup**.
3. Click the **Get Started** button.
4. If you haven't used iTunes to back up your iPhone content to your computer, please do so before proceeding.
5. Select your iPhone backup file, and then click **OK**.
6. Select the types of content you want to transfer to your HTC phone.

You can choose whether to replace the content on your HTC phone with the iPhone content.

7. Click **Start**. Wait for HTC Sync Manager to finish transferring content.
8. When done, slide open the Notifications panel on your HTC phone, and then tap .
9. Choose which apps you were using on iPhone you want to find in Google Play and download to your HTC phone.

Get Help

To find out more about using HTC Sync Manager, download the user guide PDF from the HTC support site (htc.com/hsm). Or open the Help that comes with the software.

Tip: On Windows, click  in HTC Sync Manager, and then click **Help**.

File Manager

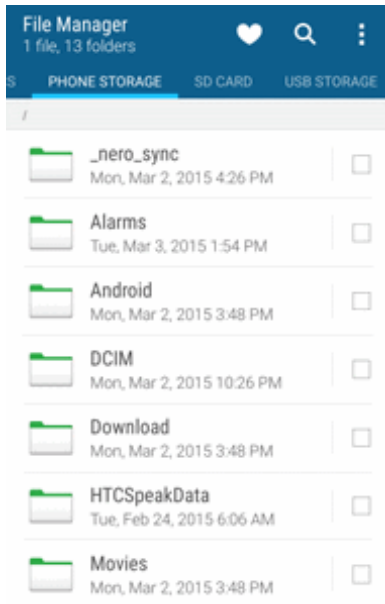
Use the File Manager app to browse and organize your files and folders on your phone storage and storage card. You can also use File Manager to browse for files and folders on your external USB storage device when you have it connected to your phone.

Switch Between Storage Types

Select an available storage on your phone that you want to manage.

1. Tap  >  >  **File Manager**.

2. Swipe left or right to switch to a file storage where you want to browse or organize your files.



Search for Files

It's easy to find files and documents using File Manager.

1. Tap > > **File Manager**.
2. Tap .
3. In the search box, enter a few characters of the filename. Matching filenames from the root and subfolders are then displayed.
4. Tap a file to open it.

Organize Your Files



Use the File Manager app to sort, copy, move, or delete your files and documents.

Sort Your Files





1. Tap > > **File Manager**.
2. Tap > **Sort**, and then choose a sorting option.

Copy or Move Your Files

1. Tap > > **File Manager**.
2. Browse for and select the file or folder you want to copy or move.
3. Tap **COPY** or **MOVE TO**.




4. Tap , and then browse for the folder where you want to copy or move the files. Or tap  > **Create folder** to create a new folder.
5. Tap **PASTE**.

Make Files as Favorites

1. Tap  >  >  **File Manager**.
2. Browse for the file or folder.
3. Select items to favorite.
4. Tap .

Tip: To remove an item from the Favorites tab, select the item and tap **Remove from favorites**.

Delete Files or Folders





1. Tap  >  >  **File Manager**.
2. Select items to delete.
3. Tap **DELETE**.

Voice Recorder



Use Voice Recorder to capture information during lectures, interviews, or even to create your own audio log.

Record Your Voice

Start creating voice memos on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Voice Recorder**.
2. Hold the microphone near the sound source.
3. Tap  to start recording a voice clip.

Note: Voice Recorder can run in the background while you do other things on your phone, except when you open other applications that also use audio functions.

4. Tap  to stop recording.
5. To play back the voice clip, tap .

Tip: To see your recorded voice clips, tap . Touch and hold a voice clip to see options for sharing, setting it as a ringtone, and more.




HTC Dot View

If you bought the HTC Dot View™ case designed for HTC One M9, use its app to personalize what's seen through the case. Choose your wallpaper, types of notifications to display, and more.


Note: The HTC Dot View app is available in [Google Play](#). Make sure to install the latest app update.

Change the HTC Dot View Wallpaper

Choose a preset wallpaper, or create your own dotted wallpaper from a photo.

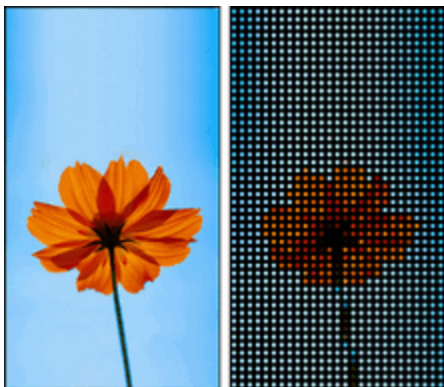
1. Tap  >  >  **HTC Dot View**.
2. Tap **Themes**.
3. Choose a preset pattern as your wallpaper.

– or –

To create your own wallpaper, tap  , and then choose whether to use an existing photo from Gallery or take a new photo. If you selected or taken a photo, crop the photo, and then tap **DONE**.

4. Tap **APPLY**.




For best results when creating your own wallpaper, use a simple image with distinct colors between the subject and background. For example, use an image that shows a high-contrast subject on a simple background.





Select Which Notifications to Display




Alerts for clock alarms, timers, calendar events, and tasks will automatically display through the HTC Dot View case. You can choose whether to display or hide Mail, Messages, and phone call notifications.

1. Tap  >  >  **HTC Dot View**.
2. In the HTC Dot View app, tap **Notification settings**.
3. Choose which notifications you want to show or hide.

Tip: For more details on using HTC Dot View, visit htc.com.

HTC Help

Before calling for support, you can first use the Help app to troubleshoot or perform diagnostics on your phone. This helps you in finding the problem cause, and in determining whether you can resolve the problem or you need to call for support.

- Tap  >  >  **Help**.

Note: If HTC Help is not preinstalled on your phone, you can download it from the Google Play Store app.

Connectivity

The following topics address your phone's connectivity options, including USB file transfer and tethering, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, IR connectivity, and more.

Connections Optimizer

The Connections Optimizer is a tool that automatically selects the best mobile network for your phone, including "remembered" Wi-Fi networks.





About Connections Optimizer

The Connections Optimizer helps you manage and enhance your data experience by finding and connecting to "remembered" Wi-Fi networks on your phone. Remembered Wi-Fi networks are networks with which you have previously chosen to connect. Active Wi-Fi connections may offer improved performance and generally improve battery life while allowing you to talk on the phone and use data at the same time.






The Connections Optimizer works by searching for available "remembered" Wi-Fi networks. If you do not leave your Wi-Fi antenna on all the time, you will only notice the Connections Optimizer operating at certain times of the day in a small number of locations on the network. Your Wi-Fi antenna will conserve battery by scanning for connections periodically (not continuously), and if no connection is achieved, the antennas will be turned off. You may also manually turn the antennas off during the scan period.

To facilitate quality assurance and enable feature enhancements, information is collected about your battery levels, Wi-Fi and network connections and usage. No personal information is collected.

Enable Connections Optimizer

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Mobile data > Automatic Connections**. You will see a disclaimer.
2. Read the disclaimer, and then tap **I Agree**.
3. Select the **Sprint Connections Optimizer** option.
 Connections Optimizer will turn on and automatically analyze your phone's connection options.

Disable Connections Optimizer

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings > Mobile data > Automatic Connections**.
 2. Clear the **Sprint Connections Optimizer** option.
 3. Tap .
-  Connection Optimizer will turn off.

Transfer Files Between Your Phone and a Computer

You can use the supplied USB connector to connect your phone directly to your computer and transfer music, pictures, and other content files.


For example, if you have a music album stored on your computer that you want to listen to on your phone with any of the music apps, just attach your phone to the computer and copy the files to the music folder.

File Transfer Tips

- If you want to save data to an SD card on your phone, make sure the SD card is installed and active. See [SD Card](#).
- Avoid removing the SD card while transferring data.
- Data exchange may use the methods outlined in the following table:

Method	Description
Media Device (MTP)	Transfer files between your phone and PC such as pictures, videos, and music.
Mass Storage Mode	Exchange data with a PC using your phone as an external storage device.

Transfer Files Between the Phone and a Computer

1. Connect your phone to your computer using the supplied USB/charging cable.
 - Insert the larger end of the cable to the charger/accessory jack at the bottom of the phone.
 - Insert the USB end of the cable into an available USB port on your computer. You may need to remove the USB cable from the charging head to access it.
2. When  appears in the notifications area, drag the status bar down to display the notifications window.
 - ❖ You will see **Media device [MTP] connected** and the files on your phone can now be accessed via your computer.
3. On your computer, navigate to the detected device (such as through the My Computer menu) and open it.
4. If available, select a drive (**SD card** for SD card storage or **Internal storage** for internal phone storage).
5. Select a folder (for example, **Music** for songs and albums) and copy files to it from your

computer.

6. When you are done, disconnect your phone from your computer.

❖ The transferred files are now saved to your phone or SD card.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi provides wireless Internet access over distances of up to 300 feet. To use your phone's Wi-Fi, you need access to a wireless access point or "hotspot."


Note: The availability and range of the Wi-Fi signal depends on a number of factors, including infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network

It's quick and easy to turn Wi-Fi on and connect to a wireless network.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn Wi-Fi on.
3. Tap **...** below the **WI-FI** tile to see a list of detected Wi-Fi networks.

Note: If the wireless network that you want is not listed, tap **⋮** > **Add network** to manually add it.

4. Tap the Wi-Fi network you want to connect to.
5. If you selected a secured network, you'll be asked to enter the network key or password.
6. Tap **CONNECT**. You'll see the Wi-Fi icon () in the status bar when connected.

The next time your phone connects to a previously accessed secured wireless network, you won't be asked to enter the key or other security information again.

Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks

You can prevent getting notified about unsecured Wi-Fi networks.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Tap **...** below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
4. Touch and hold an unsecured Wi-Fi network you want stop being notified about, and tap **Block network notification**.
5. To unblock an unsecured Wi-Fi network, touch and hold the network name and tap **Unblock network notification**.

Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS

If you're using a Wi-Fi router with Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), you can connect your phone easily.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Tap **⋮** below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
4. Tap **⋮** > **WPS Push**, and then press the WPS button on your Wi-Fi router.

Note: To use the Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) PIN method, tap **⋮** > **WPS Pin Entry**.

Disconnect from a Wireless Network

Quickly disconnect from a wireless network your phone is connected to.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Tap **⋮** below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi
4. You can:
 - Tap the wireless network that the phone is connected to, and then tap **DISCONNECT**.
 - If you want to remove the settings for this network, touch and hold the network name, and then tap **Forget network**.

To connect to another wireless network, see [Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks](#).

Wi-Fi Direct

Use Wi-Fi Direct to connect directly to other Wi-Fi Direct devices simply via Wi-Fi, without an access point or via the Internet.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, tap the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Tap **⋮** below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi networks.
4. Tap **⋮** > **Wi-Fi Direct**.
5. The Wi-Fi Direct settings menu appears.
 - Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi are unavailable at the same time.
6. Tap a device with which to connect. If connected via Wi-Fi, you will see a confirmation. Follow the onscreen instructions.
7. Accept the connection on the other device.

❖ The phone is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.

- If a connection is not accepted after a certain period, the connection request is cancelled.

To stop a connection, tap **End connection** > **OK**.

Virtual Private Networks (VPN)

Add virtual private networks (VPNs) so you can connect and access resources inside a local network, such as your corporate network.



Before you can connect to your organization's local network, you may be asked to:

- Install security certificates
- Enter your login credentials
- Download and install a required VPN app on your phone

Contact your network administrator for details. Also, your phone must first establish a Wi-Fi or data connection before you can start a VPN connection. For information about setting up and using these connections on your phone, see [Data Services General Information \(Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks\)](#).


Add a VPN Connection


You must first set a lock screen PIN or password before you can use credential storage and set up the VPN.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More** > **VPN**.
3. Tap  > **Add VPN profile**.
4. Enter the VPN settings and set them up according to the security details your network administrator gave you.
5. Tap **SAVE**.

Connect to a VPN

After you've added a VPN connection, you are now ready to connect and access that network.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More** > **VPN**.
3. Tap the VPN that you want to connect to.

4. Enter your login credentials, and then tap **CONNECT**. When you are connected, the VPN connected icon  appears in the notification area of the status bar.

You can then open the Web browser to access resources such as your corporate network intranet. For more information, see [Chrome Browser](#).




Disconnect From a VPN

Disconnect from the VPN when you're done accessing your intranet sites.


1. Slide the Notifications panel open.
2. Tap the VPN connection, and then tap **Disconnect**.

Mobile Hotspot

Mobile Hotspot allows you to turn your phone into a Wi-Fi hotspot. When this feature is turned on, you can share your phone's mobile data services via Wi-Fi with other Wi-Fi enabled devices. The feature works best when used in conjunction with 4G data services (although 3G service can also be used).

Important: Use of the Hotspot feature requires an additional subscription. Sign on to your account at sprint.com/mysprint or access your account via Sprint Zone (tap  >  >  **Sprint Zone**) to learn more.

Note: Turning on Hotspot on will disable your phone's connection to other Wi-Fi networks.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More**.
3. Tap **Mobile network sharing > Mobile Hotspot > OK**.
4. Enter a router name or use the default router name.
5. Set the password (key) for your wireless router or use the default password.

Important: To help minimize security risks, use the default settings and set a secure and unique password.

Note: The password is the key other people need to enter on their device so they can connect and use your phone as a wireless router.

6. Tap the **Mobile Hotspot** ON/OFF switch to turn on the wireless router.

Your phone is ready to be used as a wireless router when you see  on the status bar.

Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering

Use the data connection of your phone to connect another device to the Internet through tethering a USB cable.

Note: To make sure that the USB drivers for your phone are up-to-date, install the latest version of HTC Sync Manager on your computer.

Note: You may need to have USB tethering added to your data plan. Contact Sprint for details.

Note: Make sure that mobile data is turned on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More**.
3. Tap **Mobile network sharing > USB network setting > USB tethering**.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless phones. The Bluetooth communication range is usually approximately 30 feet.

Bluetooth Hints

Question: Can't use Bluetooth?

Answer: Is your phone in airplane mode? Bluetooth is unavailable in airplane mode.

Bluetooth Function Cautions

Information may not appear correctly on connected devices depending on the transferred data.

Bluetooth Information

Bluetooth is a technology that enables wireless connection with PCs, Bluetooth devices with hands-free features, etc.

Function	Description
Audio output	Listen to music, etc., wirelessly.
Hands-free calls	Call hands-free, using Bluetooth-capable hands-free devices and headsets.
Data exchange	Exchange data with Bluetooth devices.

Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit


You can listen to music over a Bluetooth stereo headset, or have hands-free conversations using a compatible Bluetooth headset or car kit.

Important: For you to listen to music with your headset, the headset must support the A2DP Bluetooth profile.

Note: Before you connect your headset, make it discoverable so your phone can find it. Refer to your headset manual for details.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Tap **⋮** below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. If you don't see your headset listed, tap **Scan for devices** to refresh the list.
5. When you see the name of your headset in the Available Devices section, tap the name. Your phone pairs with the headset and the headset connection status is displayed in the Paired Devices section.

Note: If automatic pairing fails, enter the passcode supplied with your headset.

The pairing and connection status is displayed below the hands-free headset or car kit name in the Bluetooth phones section. When the Bluetooth headset or car kit is connected to your phone, the Bluetooth connected icon  is displayed in the status bar.

Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit

Normally, you can easily reconnect your headset by switching on Bluetooth on your phone, and then turning on the headset. However, you might have to connect manually if your headset has been used with another Bluetooth device.


Important: Make sure that the headset is discoverable. Refer to the headset manual for details.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Tap **⋮** below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. Tap the headset's name in the Paired Devices section.
5. If prompted to enter a passcode, try **0000** or **1234**, or consult the headset/car kit documentation to find the passcode.

If you still cannot reconnect to the headset or car kit, follow the instructions in [Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device](#), and then follow the steps in [Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit](#).

Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device

If you do not need to use Bluetooth at any given point, you can disconnect and unpair your phone from a Bluetooth device.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Tap **...** below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. In the Paired Devices section, tap  next to the device to unpair.
5. Tap **Unpair**.

Note: Tap the name of the device to reconnect it.



Send Information Using Bluetooth




You can use Bluetooth to transfer information between your phone and another Bluetooth-enabled device such as a phone or computer. The first time you transfer information between your phone and another phone, you need to enter or confirm a security passcode. After that, your phone and the other phone are paired, and you will not need to exchange passcodes to transfer information in the future.

Important: Before you begin, set the receiving phone to discoverable mode. You may also need to set it to "Receive Beams" or "Receive Files." Refer to the phone's documentation for instructions on receiving information over Bluetooth.

You can send the following types of information, depending on the phone you are sending to:

1. On your phone, open the application that contains the information or file you want to send.
2. Follow the steps for the type of item you want to send:

What to send	How to send
Contact	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the People app, tap a contact to view the contact's details.2. Tap  > Send contact.3. Tap Send contact via, and then tap Bluetooth.4. Tap SEND.
Calendar appointment or event	In Day, Agenda, or Week view, touch and hold the event, and then tap Share via > Bluetooth .
Photos or videos	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In Gallery, select a photo and view it in full screen.2. Tap the photo and tap  > Bluetooth.

What to send	How to send
Captured photo or video	After capturing, on the Camera preview screen, tap  > Bluetooth . (Note that you must have first set a review duration in Camera settings.)
Music track	Browse to the music track you want to share, and then tap  > Share > Share file > Bluetooth .
Voice recording	On the main Voice Recorder screen, tap  > Share > Bluetooth .

3. Turn Bluetooth on and pair with the receiving phone, if you're asked to do so.
4. On the receiving device, accept the file.

Where Sent Information is Saved

When you send information from your phone using Bluetooth, the location where it's saved depends on the type of information and the receiving device.

If you send a calendar event or contact, it is normally added directly to the corresponding application on the receiving phone. For example, if you send a calendar event to a compatible phone, the event is shown in that phone's calendar application.

If you send another file type to a Windows computer, it is normally saved in the Bluetooth Exchange folder within your personal document folders.

- On Windows XP, the path may be:
C:\Documents and Settings\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange
- On Windows Vista®, the path may be:
C:\Users\[your username]\Documents
- On Windows 7, the path may be:
C:\Users\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange Folder
- On Windows 8, the path may be:
C:\Users\[your username]\Documents

If you send a file to another device, the saved location may depend on the file type. For example, if you send an image file to another wireless phone, it may be saved in a folder named "Images."

Receive Files Using Bluetooth

Your phone lets you receive various files with Bluetooth, including photos, music tracks, contact info, calendar events, and documents such as PDFs.

Important: Refer to the other device's documentation for instructions on sending information over Bluetooth.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.

3. Tap **...** below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. Tap your phone's Bluetooth name near the top of the screen to make your phone visible to nearby Bluetooth devices.
5. On the sending device, send one or more files to your phone.
6. If asked, accept the pairing request on your phone and on the sending device.
You may also be prompted to enter the same passcode or confirm the auto-generated passcode on both devices. You'll then get a Bluetooth authorization request.
7. Tap **PAIR**.
8. When your phone receives a file transfer request notification, slide the Notifications panel down, tap the incoming file notification, and then tap **ACCEPT**.
9. When a file is transferred, a download notification is displayed. Slide the Notifications panel down, and then tap the relevant notification to view the file.

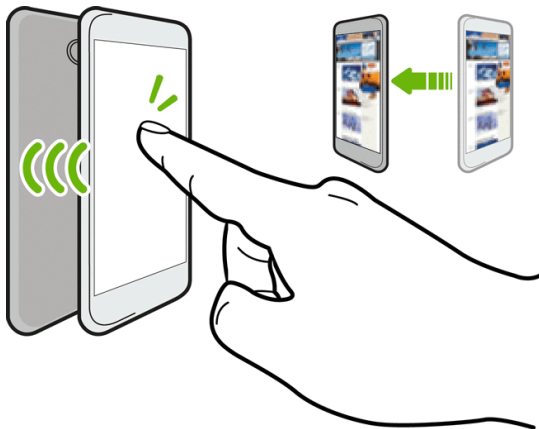
Tip: You can also tap **⋮** > **Show received files** to view files received via Bluetooth.

When you open a received file, what happens next depends on the file type:

- Media files and documents are usually opened directly in a compatible application. For example, if you open a music track, it starts playing in the Music app.
- For a vCalendar file, select the calendar where you want to save the event, and then tap **Import**. The vCalendar is added to your Calendar events. (For more information, see [Calendar](#).)
- For a vCard contact file, you can choose to import one, several, or all of those contacts to your contacts list.

Share Content with NFC


With built-in NFC (near field communication) on your phone, you can share content to someone's mobile phone in an instant. Beam a webpage you're viewing, contact information, and more by just holding your phone and the other phone back to back.



Note: You can also use NFC for contactless payment. Contact Sprint to find out about the availability of NFC payment services.

Turn NFC On

Before you can beam content to another NFC-capable device, you need to enable NFC on your phone.

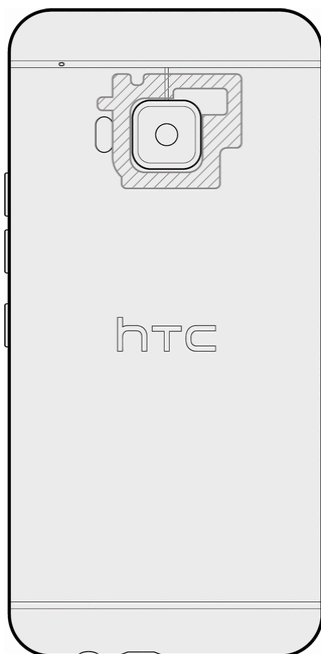
1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap .
2. Under Wireless & Networks, tap **More**.
3. Tap the **NFC ON/OFF** switch to turn it on and off.

Beam Content

Make sure that both devices are unlocked and have NFC turned on. If the other device has an Android Beam™ option, make sure it is also turned on.

1. While viewing the content that you want to share, hold your phone and the other phone back to back.

Tip: Make sure that the NFC area (shaded part) of your phone and the other phone's NFC area are close to one another. Experiment by slightly moving the phones until a connection is made.



2. Tap the screen.

The shared content appears on the other screen. For some items that you've shared (such as contact information), additional instructions on how to save the item will appear on the receiving device.

HTC Connect

With HTC Connect[®], wirelessly stream music or video from HTC One M9 to your speakers or TV by just swiping up the screen with 3 fingers.

You can stream media to any of the following types of devices:

- Multi-room speakers that support Qualcomm[®] AllPlay[™]
- Blackfire[®] compliant multi-room speakers
- DLNA compatible speakers and TV
- Miracast compatible display devices
- Bluetooth speakers
- HTC certified consumer electronic devices or accessories that have the HTC Connect logo.



Note: Some devices may need to be paired before you can share to them.

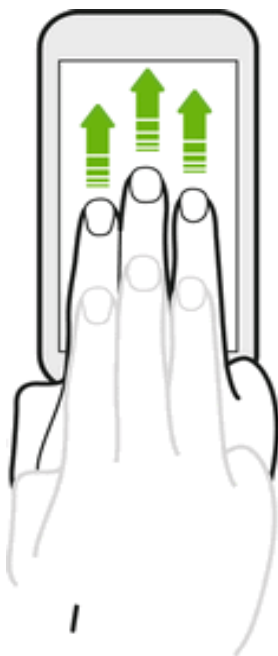
To see a list of supported devices or accessories, go to htc-connect.com/certified-devices. For more information about HTC Connect, visit htc-connect.com.

Share Media Using HTC Connect

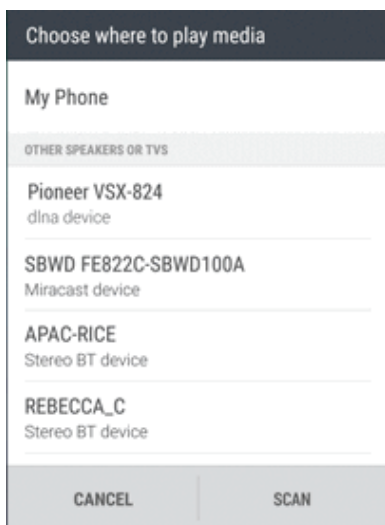
Before you start, make sure you have set up your speakers, TV, or appliance to connect to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to its documentation on how to set it up.

1. Open and play any music or other media content that you want to share from your phone.

2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.



3. Choose the device you want to connect to.

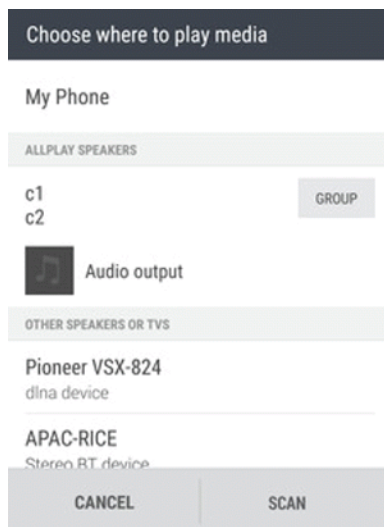


4. Once connected, use your phone to control the volume, pause or resume playback, and more.
5. To stop wireless media sharing and disconnect from the device, swipe down with three fingers on the screen.

Stream Music to Speakers Powered by Qualcomm AllPlay Media Platform

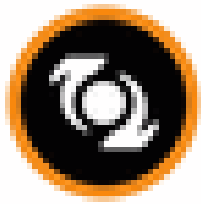
Before you start, make sure your AllPlay speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to the documentation that comes with your speakers to set up and connect them to your Wi-Fi network.

1. After connecting your AllPlay speakers to your Wi-Fi network, open a music app on your phone.
2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.
 - ❖ Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available AllPlay speakers listed.
3. Tap the speaker you want to connect to.
4. In the music app that you're using, start playing music. You'll then hear the music play from the speaker you've selected.
5. To switch between AllPlay speakers or to group speakers, swipe up the screen again with three fingers.
 - Just tap another speaker to stream music to it.
 - To group speakers so that music plays through them at the same time, tap the **GROUP** button next to a speaker name, select the other speakers you want to group it with, and then tap **OK**.



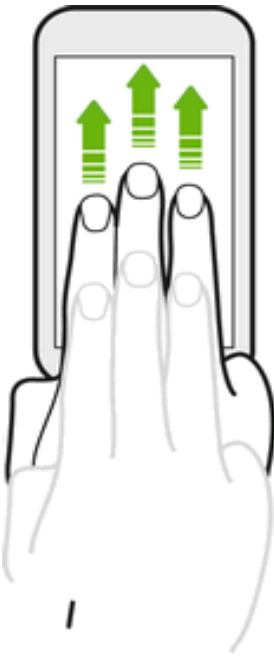
Stream Music to Blackfire Compliant Speakers

Play music simultaneously to multiple Blackfire compliant speakers from your phone.



Before you start, make sure your speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network. Refer to the documentation that comes with your speakers to set up and connect them to your Wi-Fi network.

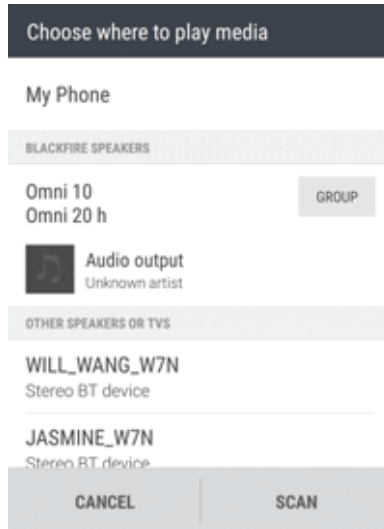
1. After connecting your speakers to your Wi-Fi network, open a music app on your phone.
2. Swipe up with three fingers on the screen.



❖ Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available speakers listed.

3. Tap the speaker you want to connect to.
4. In the music app that you're using, start playing music. You'll then hear the music play from the speaker you've selected.
5. To switch between speakers or to group them, swipe up the screen again with three fingers.

- Just tap another speaker to stream music to it.
- To group speakers so that music plays through them at the same time, tap the Group button next to a speaker name, select the other speakers you want to group it with, and then tap **OK**.



Rename the Speakers

You can rename your Blackfire compliant speakers in Settings.




1. Make sure the speakers are connected to your Wi-Fi network.
2. Tap > > **Settings** > **HTC Connect**.
 - ❖ Your phone then turns Wi-Fi on automatically and scans for media devices on your Wi-Fi network. You'll then see the available Blackfire speakers listed.
3. Tap next to a speaker name.
4. Enter the new speaker name, and then tap **DONE**.

Global Services

With your phone and global roaming service from Sprint WorldwideSM Wireless Service, you can make phone calls and use wireless data services around the globe on compatible CDMA and GSM/UMTS networks. For a country-specific travel guide, select your phone and destination from sprint.com/traveltips.

Set the Communications Method for Global Use

Select a communications method for an overseas carrier as needed.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings** > **Mobile data**.
2. Tap **Network mode**.
3. Select **CDMA Only**, **LTE/CDMA**, **GSM/UMTS Only**, or **Automatic**.

❖ The communications method is set.

- At the time of purchase, your phone's default mode of **Automatic** is set. This allows global usage and normally will not need to be changed.

Activate Sprint Worldwide Service on Your Account

Before using your phone in global roaming mode, you must activate Sprint Worldwide service.

To activate Sprint Worldwide service:

- Chat with or email an international support rep by visiting sprint.com/swwsupport.

— or —

- Call Sprint Worldwide Customer support at **1-888-226-7212**.

Your Phone's SIM Card for International GSM Roaming

Your phone comes with a preinstalled SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card to support roaming on compatible GSM networks.

Note: Your SIM card should be preinstalled. If you need to reinstall your SIM card, follow the instructions in [SIM Card](#).


Note: The SIM included contains information specific to your phone and should be retained with the phone for use on GSM networks.

Enable Global Roaming Mode


Your phone is designed to enter global roaming mode automatically when you activate your Sprint Worldwide service, meaning that it should automatically connect to an appropriate CDMA/LTE network or GSM/UMTS network when you travel. You may set global roaming options through the settings menu.

You may also need to set your network mode options through the settings menu. See [Set the Communications Method for Global Use](#).

To enable your phone for international roaming:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Mobile data** > **Roaming** > **Automatic**.
2. From Mobile network settings, tap the checkbox for **International Voice**.
3. With International Voice selected, tap the checkbox for **International LTE Data**.

To set your network mode options manually:

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Mobile data** > **Network mode**.
 - To allow connections to CDMA or LTE networks only, tap **CDMA Only** or **LTE/CDMA**.
 - To allow connections to GSM or UMTS networks only, tap **GSM/UMTS Only**.
- ❖ To allow connections to available CDMA/LTE or GSM/UMTS networks, tap **Automatic**. This is the recommended setting for international use.

Make and Receive Worldwide Calls

When traveling on international networks, you can place and answer calls as you would on the Sprint network (see [Place and Answer Calls](#)), although some additional instructions may be required to place a call. Some features and services are not available in all countries. For more information on services that are available while roaming, visit sprint.com/sww.







Make Calls Using Plus (+) Code Dialing

Placing calls from one country to another country is simple with the Plus (+) Code Dialing feature. When placing international calls, you can use Plus Code Dialing to enter the appropriate international access code for your location (for example, 011 for international calls placed from the United States).

Note: Plus Code Dialing is only available when roaming internationally on GSM networks and on certain CDMA networks in the United States, Canada, and the Caribbean.

Note: International access codes and dialing information are available online at sprint.com/sww.

To use Plus Code Dialing to place an international call:

1. Tap  >  to display the phone screen.
2. If you are on the GSM network, touch and hold  to insert a “+” on the phone dial screen. (The “+” symbol automatically inserts the international access code for the country from which you are calling.)
3. If you are on the CDMA network outside Canada or the Caribbean, enter the international access code for the country from which you are calling.
4. Tap   to enter the US country code, and then enter the area code and number.
5. Tap  to place the call.

Sprint International Voicemail Service

Your Sprint voicemail will follow you as you travel. All of your unanswered calls will be forwarded to your Sprint voicemail. You will need to be sure your voicemail box is already set up and that you know your voicemail password.

Note: Sprint voicemail may not be available on all networks; check sprint.com/sww for service information.





International Voicemail Troubleshooting

There are a few tips to keep in mind when using Sprint voicemail while traveling.

- Some carriers may not support voicemail indicators. It may be necessary to call your voicemail to see if you have any new messages.
- If you hear the message “Please enter the number of the subscriber you wish to call,” enter your 10-digit wireless phone number.

Set Up Your Voicemail Access Number for International Use

To simplify accessing your Sprint Voicemail while traveling, you can set up your voicemail access number as a Contacts entry. This will make it faster and easier to access your messages while roaming internationally.

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.
2. Tap .
3. In the Name field, enter the name of your voicemail number (for example, “My Voicemail”).

4. In the phone number field, enter **0+** **1** **∞** (+1), your area code, and your wireless phone number.

5. Tap ✓.

❖ Your voicemail access number is saved as a contact.

Access Your Voicemail Internationally

You will need to call your voicemail number to access your voicemail while roaming internationally.

New Message Indicators

Your voicemail message indicators may be displayed differently when roaming internationally.

- A “Message Waiting” indicator icon or a text message is displayed when a voicemail message is received.
- You may see “Missed Call” on your screen prior to receiving a message notification.
- You must call voicemail in order to retrieve messages. Follow the instructions on the previous page to store your voicemail number for easy access.

Retrieve Voicemail Messages

The voicemail retrieval process while traveling is the same as on the Sprint Network; however, you will be required to enter your voicemail password.

To retrieve your voicemail messages:

1. Tap  >  >  **People**.

2. Tap the voicemail entry and then tap the number to call it.

❖ Your phone dials your voicemail number.

3. When your voicemail answers, enter the password, and tap **#** to access your voicemail.

❖ Your voicemail box is accessed.

International Data Roaming

Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service can also keep you connected via email and Web browsing when traveling in countries in which Sprint offers data service.

Data services are available on both CDMA and GSM/UMTS networks. Check sprint.com/traveltips and sprint.com/sww to determine the services available where you are traveling.

Note: Prior to using your Sprint Worldwide GSM/UMTS Data Services, you must establish and utilize your CDMA data services domestically on the Sprint Network.

Get Started With Sprint Worldwide Data Services

To use Sprint Worldwide Data Services, you will need to have these services activated on your account.


- To activate, call Sprint Worldwide Customer Support at **1-888-226-7212**. Representatives are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week to assist you.

Access Email and Data Services Internationally

To access your email and browse the Web when traveling, you may need to manually select the carrier that provides Sprint service in your location. You can find a list of carriers for each country where GSM data service is offered at sprint.com/sww. Then, follow the instructions below to select the appropriate carrier network on your phone.

Access International Data Services on GSM/UMTS Networks

To select a GSM data service carrier for a specific country:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then tap  > **Mobile data**.
2. Make sure the check boxes are selected for **International LTE Data** and **Allow GSM data**.
3. Tap **Available GSM networks** > **Search networks**.
4. Select a specific operator.

❖ Data roaming on GSM/UMTS networks is set.

Access Email and Data Services Internationally on CDMA Networks

If data service is available on an international CDMA network, then you only need to set the phone to CDMA; you will not need to select the specific carrier. Selecting a specific carrier is only necessary for providers on the GSM network. If your phone has automatically selected a GSM network while traveling, then you will need to set the phone to CDMA to access CDMA data services. (See [Enable Global Roaming Mode](#).) Visit sprint.com/sww for a list of services available in each country.

Contact Sprint for Assistance with International Service

If you experience any issues with voice or data services while outside of the United States, Sprint offers customer support 24 hours a day. In the event that you do experience an issue, try the following actions:

- First try powering your phone off and then back on; this will force your phone to reregister with the network.

- Try manually selecting another network. Information for selecting networks can be found in the phone guide.

If neither of these actions resolves your issue, you will need to contact customer service (see below). When calling to report an issue, the following information will be beneficial in trying to resolve your issue as quickly as possible:

- Your wireless phone number.
- The city and country you are traveling in.
- Any error message that displays on your phone or that you heard when trying to place a call.
- If the issue is with data, were you able to place voice calls?
- If the issue is with voice service, were you able to access data?

Please call the numbers below if you need assistance:

While in the United States: Call **1-888-226-7212**.

While traveling outside the United States:

- In GSM mode: tap **0+** and then dial **1-817-698-4199**.
- In CDMA mode: enter the country code and then dial **1-817-698-4199**.

There is no charge for this call from your wireless phone.

From a landline phone when outside the United States:

Sprint Worldwide Customer Support can be reached from a landline phone at **1-817-698-4199**. Access or connection fees may apply. The toll free numbers below can also be used to contact Sprint Worldwide Customer Support in the following countries:

Country	From Landline Phone
Caribbean (Anguilla, Barbados, Cayman Islands, and Dominica)	1-888-226-7212
France	0800-903200
Germany	0800-180-0951
Italy	800-787-986
Mexico	001-877-294-9003
Trinidad and Tobago	1-800-201-7545
United Kingdom	0808-234-6616

Note: This toll free service is available on ordinary landline phones and some public pay phones. This service does not cover any hotel access charges.

Settings

The following topics provide an overview of items you can change using your phone's Settings menus.

Basic Settings

From the home screen, tap  >  **Settings** to access your phone's settings menu.

The table below outlines the top-level settings categories.

Category	Description
Airplane mode	Turn Airplane mode on or off.
Wi-Fi	Enable and set Wi-Fi options.
Wi-Fi Calling	Enable and set Wi-Fi Calling options.
Bluetooth	Enable Bluetooth connections.
Mobile data	Settings for your mobile network and data connection.
HTC Connect	Options where to play media.
More	Settings for data usage, default messaging app, NFC, Mobile network sharing, HTC Mini+, and VPN.
Personalize	Options for customizing your phone's wallpaper, navigation bar, themes, sound, and more.
Accounts & sync	Set up your email and social network accounts.
Location	Select your phone's location access options.
Security	Set up a screen lock, Kid Mode options, and other security features.
Accessibility	Set accessibility options such as screen magnification, TalkBack, and more.
Backup and reset	Options for selecting the backup account, restoring a backup, and resetting the phone.
Get content from another phone	Options for transferring content from an old phone to your new HTC phone.
Display & gestures	Change the display, motion gestures, and G-Sensor settings.
HTC Boomsound with Dolby Audio	Turn HTC BoomSound on or off and select a sound mode.
Sound & notification	Set your sound profile, volumes, incoming call options, and system sounds.
Call	Options for received calls, voicemail settings, and others including hearing aids and CDMA call settings (TTY mode, DDTM mode, plus code dialing, etc).

Category	Description
Apps	View all downloaded or running apps, uninstall apps, search for an app and more.
Storage	View your phone and SD card storage, format the storage card, and more.
Power	Check your battery level, and battery usage, turn on power saver and extreme power saving mode, and more.
Language & keyboard	Change the language and the onscreen keyboard settings.
Date & time	Change the date and time and date/time format.
Printing	Choose print services using Google Cloud Print.
Activate this device	Activate your phone or check your plan.
System updates	Options for updating your profile, PRL, UICC, and phone software.
About	View your phone's hardware and software information.

Airplane Mode

Enable or disable Airplane mode.

- See [Airplane Mode](#) for details.

Wi-Fi

Your phone lets you take advantage of Wi-Fi hotspots for high-speed data access using available computer networks.

- See [Wi-Fi](#) for details.

Wi-Fi Calling Settings

Set up and enable Wi-Fi Calling on your phone.

- See [Wi-Fi Calling](#) for details.

Bluetooth Settings

Your phone's Bluetooth capabilities let you use wireless headsets, send and receive pictures and files, and more.

- See [Bluetooth](#) for details.

Mobile Data Settings

This menu lets you turn your data connection on or off, and more.

- See [Data Services General Information \(Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks\)](#) for details.




HTC Connect

Configure settings for HTC Connect.

- See [HTC Connect](#) for details.

More Wireless & Network Settings

Additional options that let you view your data usage and set up VPN, and NFC.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Under Wireless & networks, tap **More** and select an option.
 - **Data usage:** Check how much data usage have you been using or check the data usage of certain apps. See [Manage Your Data Usage](#).
 - **Default messaging app:** Set the default SMS app to use on your phone.
 - **NFC:** Share information wirelessly with other NFC-enabled device. See [Share Content with NFC](#).
 - **Mobile network sharing:** Use these settings to turn Mobile Hotspot on or off, or enable USB tethering. See [Mobile Hotspot](#) or [Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering](#).
 - **HTC Mini+:** Configure and manage your phone's connection with the HTC Mini+ (sold separately).
 - **VPN:** Configure your Virtual Private Network (VPN) settings so you can connect to your company's intranet sites. See [Virtual Private Networks \(VPN\)](#).

Personalize Settings

Use the Personalize menu to customize your phone's display, add items to the Home screen, or change the sound settings.





Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings

Using the phone's Personalize home screen menus, you can set the following settings.

- Customize the wallpaper of your Home screen by choosing from a collection of wallpapers or from your own photos. See [Customize the Home Screen](#).
- Add apps and widgets to the widget panels. See [Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts](#).
- Manage additional home screen panels. See [Organize Your Widget Panels](#).
- Change the lock screen wallpaper. See [Customize the Lock Screen](#).
- Change the phone's theme. See [Themes](#).

Ringtone




Use the Ringtone settings menu to select a phone ringtone or to make your own music as ringtone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize > Ringtone**.
3. Do any of the following:
 - Select a ringtone from the list and tap **APPLY**.
 - Add a ringtone from your music. Tap , tap a music track, tap **OK**, and then tap **APPLY**.

Note: To learn how to trim an MP3 song and save it as a ringtone, see [Set a Song as a Ringtone](#).




Notification Sound

The Notification sound menu lets you select your phone's notification sound.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize > Notification sound**.
3. Select a sound and tap **APPLY**.





Alarm

Tap this option to select an alarm sound. For details on how to set an alarm, see [Set an Alarm](#).

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize > Alarm**.
3. Select a sound and tap **APPLY**.

Font

Use these options to select a font and set the font size.





1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize > Font style**.
3. Select a font and tap .

Tip: To install more fonts to your phone, tap .

4. Tap **Font size**, and then select the size you want.

Keyboard and Dialer Color

Tap any of these options to change the keyboard and dialer color.





1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Personalize > Keyboard color** or **Dialer color**.
3. Select a color and tap .

Accounts & Sync

The Accounts & sync settings menu lets you add and manage all your email, social networking, online storage, and HTC account.

Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More

Add your favorite social networks, email accounts, and online storages on your phone so you are connected anywhere you go.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accounts & sync**.
3. Tap .
4. Tap an account type. You can set up these accounts on your phone: Exchange ActiveSync, Facebook, Google, HTC Account, Instagram for HTC Sense, LinkedIn for HTC Sense, Mail, Outlook.com, Scribble, and Twitter.
5. Enter your account information and follow screen instructions to proceed.
Depending on the account type, you may need to enter an email address or user address, password, domain name, or other information. For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, contact your server administrator to determine what information you will need.

Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account

You can use this menu to add an Exchange ActiveSync account on your phone so you can send and receive email from your corporate email address.

- See [Add an Email Account](#).

Add Email Accounts

Use the Accounts & sync menu to add new email accounts on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accounts & sync**.

3. Tap **+** > **Mail**, and then enter your email address and password.
4. Tap **NEXT** to continue with regular setup, or tap **MANUAL SETUP** if your account requires additional customization.
5. Enter an account name and your name, and then tap **FINISH SETUP**.

You can also use the Mail app to set up additional email accounts. For more information, see [Add an Email Account](#).

Add One or More Google Accounts

Sign in to your Google Account to see your Gmail, contacts, and calendars, and to use Google apps on your phone.

- See [Add a Gmail Account](#).

Forgot Your Google Account Password?

If you have forgotten your Google Account password, you can try to recover it by going to the Google website.





1. On your phone or computer, open your Web browser
2. Go to google.com/accounts/recovery.
3. Select **I don't know my password**.
4. Enter the email address or username that you use to sign in to your Google Account and click **Continue**.
5. Follow the instructions on the screen to reset your password.

Manage Your Online Accounts

Manage the online accounts you have associated with your phone.




Remove an Account

You can remove an account from your phone. Removing an account does not remove accounts and information from the online service itself.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accounts & sync**.
3. Tap the account that you want to remove.
4. Tap  > **Remove**.
5. Tap **REMOVE ACCOUNT** to confirm.

Important: Some personal data may be retained by the third-party app after you have removed the account from your phone.

Sync All Your Accounts Automatically

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accounts & sync**.
3. Tap the **Auto-sync** ON/OFF switch to turn automatic sync on or off.

Change Synced Data or Settings for an Account

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accounts & sync**.
3. Tap the account that you want to update.
4. Tap the item you want to sync or edit.

Location Settings

Your Location settings menu lets you select how your phone determines its location (using the wireless network, GPS satellites, both, or neither).




Location Setting

Your phone is equipped with a Location setting for use in connection with location-based services.

The Location feature allows the network to detect your position. Turning **Location** off will hide your location from everyone except 9-1-1.

Note: Turning on **Location** will allow the network to detect your position using GPS technology, making some Sprint applications and services easier to use.

To enable your phone's Location setting feature:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Location**.
3. Tap the ON/OFF switch to turn location services on and off.
4. Under Location sources, select the location mode you want. For example, for a better estimate of your location, choose **High accuracy**. To save battery power, choose **Battery saving**.




When you turn the Location setting feature on, the phone displays the  icon on the status bar.

When you turn Location setting off, the phone displays the  icon.

Important: Turning off a location service means no applications on your phone will collect your location data through that location service. However, third party applications may collect — and your phone may continue to provide — location data through other services, including through Wi-Fi and signal triangulation.




Google Location Reporting

Select this option if you want to allow Google to collect anonymous location data or to allow certain apps to determine your location.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Location**.
3. Tap **Google Location Reporting**.
4. Tap **Location Reporting** and **Location History** to turn these settings on or off.

HTC Location Services

Select this option to set your home and work address for precise location and personal usage with HTC Sense Home.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Location**.
3. Tap **HTC Location Services**.
4. Set your home and work address.




Security Settings

Use the Security settings to help increase your phone security, privacy, and more.




Screen Lock Settings

You can increase the security of your phone by creating a screen lock. When enabled, you will be asked to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen, enter the correct PIN, or enter the correct password to unlock the phone's control keys, buttons, and touchscreen. You can also use face recognition to unlock your screen.

Enable or Disable the Lock and Security Screens

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Tap **Screen lock** to show the lock screen and not the security screen.
4. Tap **No lock screen** to disable both the lock and security screens.




Use Face Unlock - Smart Lock

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**, and then select and set up a screen lock. This will be your backup screen lock method to use in case the phone doesn't recognize you or a trusted device.
3. On the Security screen, tap **Smart Lock**.
4. Confirm your screen lock.
5. Tap **Trusted face**.
6. Tap **SET UP** > **NEXT** and follow the screen instructions.
7. Tap **Lock phone after**, and then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

To help make Smart Lock more reliable and more secure, you can train HTC One M9 to recognize your face in different situations, such as when you're wearing glasses or sporting a beard.

Tap **Smart Lock**, confirm your screen lock, then tap **Trusted face** > **Improve facematching**. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a Screen Unlock Pattern

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Tap **Screen lock** > **Pattern**.
4. Draw the screen unlock pattern by connecting at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal, or diagonal direction. Lift your finger from the screen when finished.
5. The phone records the pattern. Tap **CONTINUE**.
6. When prompted, draw the screen unlock pattern again, and then tap **CONFIRM**.

If you fail to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

Note: To change your unlock screen pattern, tap **Screen lock** on the **Security** Draw your current screen unlock pattern and then tap **Pattern**.




Use a Screen Unlock PIN

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Tap **Screen lock** > **PIN**.

4. Enter a PIN and tap **CONTINUE**.
5. Enter your PIN again to confirm and tap **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct PIN after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.




Use a Screen Unlock Password

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Tap **Screen lock > Password**.
4. Enter a password and tap **CONTINUE**.
5. Enter your password again to confirm and tap **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct password after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

Lock Screen and Password Settings




Increase your privacy by selecting what type of information you want to display on the lock screen. You can also choose to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Do any of the following:
 - Select the **Incoming phone calls** option to hide the private contact's name and photo on the lock screen. See [Private Contacts](#).
 - Clear the **Make passwords visible** option (recommended) to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs

By default, you can install only programs and games downloaded from Google Play. The Security menu lets you allow installation of non-Play Store apps on your phone.

To allow installation of non-Play Store apps on the phone:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Security**.
3. Select the **Unknown sources** option.

Important: After installing the app, go back to **Settings > Security** and make sure to clear the **Unknown sources** option. This can help protect your phone from installing other insecure apps from the Web.




Work with Certificates

Use client and Certificate Authority (CA) digital certificates to enable your phone to access VPN or secured Wi-Fi networks, and also to provide authentication to online servers. You can get a certificate from your system administrator or download it from sites that require authentication.

Note: Some apps such as your browser or email client let you install certificates directly in the app. See the app's help for details.




Install a Digital Certificate

Note: You must set a lock screen PIN or password before installing a digital certificate.

1. Save the certificate file in the root folder on your phone.
2. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
3. Tap **Security**.
4. Tap **Install from storage**.
5. If you have more than one certificate in the root folder, select the certificate you want to install.
6. Enter a name for the certificate and tap **OK**.

Accessibility Settings

Use these settings when you've downloaded and installed an accessibility tool, such as a screen reader that provides voice feedback. You can turn accessibility functions or services on or off.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accessibility** and choose the settings you want. Options include:
 - **TalkBack:** Turn this option on if you want your phone to provide spoken feedback. TalkBack helps blind and low-vision users.
 - **Switch Access:** Turn this option on if you want to control your phone using configurable key combinations.
 - **Font size:** Tap this option to select a font size for better readability.
 - **Captions:** Turn this option on and then tap it to customize captions for your phone.
 - **Magnification gestures:** Tap this option to enable magnification gestures such as zooming in or out by triple-tapping the screen.

- **Color inversion / Color correction** Turn on color inversion or color correction to improve screen visibility.
- **Notification reminder:** Turn on this option to turn notifications on or off.
- **High contrast text:** Select this option to enable high-contrast text for better readability.
- **Power button ends call:** When selected, you can press the Power/Lock button to end a call.
- **Autorotate screen:** Select this option to automatically change the screen orientation when the phone is rotated.
- **Speak passwords:** When selected, your phone will speak the passwords you enter on your phone.
- **Accessibility shortcut:** Tap this option to quickly turn on accessibility features on your phone.
- **Text-to-speech output:** Tap to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to a speech synthesis demo.
- **Touch & hold delay:** Set the delay when touching and holding items on the screen.

Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack

Use TalkBack if you need to navigate your phone by spoken feedback. When you tap the screen, your phone vibrates and gives you an audible response so you know what you are tapping.

Turn TalkBack On

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
 2. Tap **Accessibility > TalkBack**.
 3. Tap the **TalkBack ON/OFF** switch.
 4. Read the TalkBack disclaimer and then tap **OK**. Your phone will enable **Explore by touch**, which provides an audible description of what you're touching on the screen.
- ❖ A short tutorial explaining how to use TalkBack will begin playing after you turn on TalkBack.

Note: TalkBack works best if you turn off auto-rotate screen.

Use TalkBack Gestures

When TalkBack is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures.

Note: HTC gestures such as 3-finger swiping may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled.

To open an item:

1. Drag your finger on the screen to find and select the item.
2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen to open the item.

To move an item:

1. Drag your finger on the screen to find the item.
2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen, but don't lift your finger on the second tap.
3. Drag the item to a new spot and then lift your finger.

To scroll through a screen:

- Use two fingers to swipe up, down, left or right.

To unlock the lock screen:

- Use two fingers to swipe up from the bottom of the screen.





To open the Notifications panel:

- Use two fingers to swipe down from the top of the screen.

Assign TalkBack Shortcuts

TalkBack has customizable gestures that you can use to open the Notifications panel, view recent apps, access TalkBack controls, and more.

Important: The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accessibility** > **TalkBack**.
3. Tap  > **Settings** > **Manage gestures**.
4. Tap any of the gestures under Shortcut gestures, and then select an action.

Use TalkBack Context Menus

TalkBack has context menus for controlling continuous reading and global TalkBack controls. These menus can be accessed using TalkBack shortcut gestures.

1. Turn TalkBack on.
2. Do one of the following:
 - To open the continuous reading menu, use one finger to swipe up and right in one continuous movement.
 - To open the global context menu, use one finger to swipe down and right in one continuous movement.




Note: If you already changed the TalkBack shortcut gestures, check your TalkBack settings for the appropriate gesture.

3. Touch and hold anywhere on the screen.
4. Drag your finger around the screen to explore the options.

Note: To cancel an action, drag your finger to your starting position.




Change the TalkBack Reading Speed

Important: The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accessibility** > **Text-to-speech output** > **Speech rate**.
3. Select a speech rate.

Tip: You can test the speech rate by tapping **Listen to an example**.

Change the TalkBack Language Settings

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Accessibility**.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Select a different language: Tap **Text-to-speech output** > **Google Text-to-speech Engine** > **Language**.
 - Install a language: Tap **Text-to-speech output** > **Google Text-to-speech Engine** > **Install voice data**.
4. Select the language you want to use.

Note: Not all languages are supported.

Backup and Reset

Find ways on how to back up your data or how to reset the phone.

Backup

Always keep important stuff on your phone. Back up your phone before you erase the storage, do a factory reset, or upgrade to a new phone.

Backup Options

- **HTC Backup.** Use the built-in HTC Backup to back up your accounts, apps, settings, and more to the cloud so that it will be easier to restore them on your phone (after a factory reset) or on a newer phone.
- **HTC Sync Manager.** Use HTC Sync Manager to import music, photos, and videos to your computer. You can also sync locally stored contacts, calendar events, bookmarks, documents, and playlists to your computer. Likewise, HTC Sync Manager is a good alternative if you don't want to back up your accounts, settings, and other personal content to the cloud. You can use it to create backups of your phone on your computer. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).
- **Other backup options.** Separately back up other data and file types if they're not supported in HTC Backup and HTC Sync Manager. In some apps, you can back up data to the storage on the phone so you can easily restore them after a factory reset.
 - **Messages.** Back up your text messages to the storage on the phone, or save them as an email attachment. See [Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages](#).
 - **Contacts.** Save contacts and other personal data to your online accounts so you can just sync them when switching to another phone. If you have locally stored contacts in the People app, export them to the storage on the phone. See [Back Up and Restore Your Contacts](#).
 - **Files.** Manually copy and paste files by connecting your phone to your computer as a disk drive. You can also upload files to online storage and services.
 - **Other data.** If you added new words to your personal dictionary in the onscreen keyboard, back up the dictionary to the storage or save it as an email attachment. See [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#). Check the other apps to see if they support exporting data to the storage.

Note: If you're backing up data to the storage, don't choose to erase the storage when you do a factory reset.

Use HTC Backup

Save the time and frustration of restoring your content when you do a factory reset or you lose, damage, or buy another phone. On your phone, use HTC Backup to do a regular backup to the cloud so you can easily restore your content next time.

HTC Backup uses your Google Drive or Dropbox storage to keep your content and settings. It can back up and restore the following:




- **Personalization settings.** These include your feed sources in HTC BlinkFeed, widgets, wallpaper, Home screen layout, and ringtones.
- **Accounts and passwords.** HTC Backup stores the login credentials for many popular email and social network accounts, including Exchange ActiveSync, Outlook.com, and POP/IMAP.

- **Apps and settings.** These include your contacts stored on your phone, text messages, Web bookmarks, personal dictionary, Wi-Fi networks, free apps you've installed, grid size and sort order on the Apps screen, and more.

Backup Your Phone to Google Drive

Turn on HTC Backup to do a daily backup of your content over Wi-Fi. You can turn it on by selecting **Back up phone daily** while doing the on-device setup, or enable it in Settings.

Note: Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Backup & reset** > **Backup account**.
3. Tap **HTC Account**.
4. Sign in with your Google Account, HTC Account, or Facebook account.
5. On the Cloud storage screen, tap the Google Drive option that has your Google Account name under it, and then tap **OK**.
6. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.
7. When prompted, tap **OK** to allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
8. To do a daily backup, make sure the **Automatic backup** switch is on. You can also tap **Back up now** to manually back up your phone anytime.

You'll see the most recent backup date and time under Backup history.

Restore Your Backup to Your Phone From Google Drive

If you backed up your phone to Google Drive before, you can restore your backup to your phone, or to a new HTC phone.

Note: Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

Note: To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

1. When you turn on a new HTC phone for the first time or after a factory reset, choose to restore content, and then select **Restore from HTC Backup** on the Set up phone screen.
2. Make sure to sign in using the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Your backup history will then be displayed.
3. Select a backup, and then tap **NEXT**.
4. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account to backup your phone, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.

5. When prompted, allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
6. After your settings have been restored, tap **NEXT** to continue setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar.

The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

Tip: You can also go to Settings, and then tap **Backup & reset > Restore from HTC Backup**. Just make sure that you've already signed in to the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Restoring a backup will overwrite the current data and settings on your phone.

Reset Your Phone

If your phone has a persistent problem that cannot be solved, you can perform a factory reset (also called a hard reset or master reset). A factory reset reverts the phone back to its initial state — the state before you turned on the phone for the first time.

The following will be removed from the phone when you do a factory reset:




- Your Google Account
- All accounts you've added in **Settings > Accounts & sync** and the data associated with these accounts
- Personal data that you've created or synced to the phone such as your profile, contacts, messages, email, calendar events, and more
- System and application data and settings
- Downloaded apps

Files such as your music, photos, videos, and documents will also be deleted if you select the **Erase all data** option.

Be sure to back up any data and files you want to keep before you do a factory reset.

Note: A factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

Reset Your Phone via Settings

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Backup & reset > Reset phone**.
3. If you also want to delete media and other data on your phone, select **Erase all data**.
4. To delete media and other data on your storage card (if you installed one), tap **Erase SD card**.
5. Tap **OK**.

Once the phone has reset, it will run through the Hands Free Activation and update processes again. When finished, you will see the Welcome screen and Setup application. See [Complete the Setup Screens](#) to start over.

Get Content From Another Phone

These options let you transfer content from a previous device to your new phone.




- See [Transfer Content to Your New Phone](#) for details.

Display & Gestures Settings

Adjusting your phone's display and gestures settings not only helps you see what you want, it can also help increase battery life.





Glove Mode

Turn Glove mode on to get better screen responses even when you're wearing gloves.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Select the **Glove mode** option.

Auto-rotate Screen

By default, the screen orientation automatically changes when the phone is rotated. To disable automatic screen orientation:




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Clear the **Auto rotate screen** option and tap .

Note: Not all application screens support automatic rotation. The screen orientation automatically changes to landscape mode when you turn the phone sideways.

Note: The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).




Font Size

You can adjust the text size for your viewing comfort.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Font size** and then select the font size.




Brightness

By default, the screen brightness automatically adjusts depending on the surrounding lighting conditions.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Brightness level**.
4. Drag the slider to adjust the brightness.
5. Tap **OK**.

Set the Maximum Brightness Level

You can set the maximum brightness level for your phone screen.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Brightness level**.
4. Clear the **Automatic brightness** option.
5. Drag the slider to adjust the maximum brightness level.

Quickly Adjust the Brightness

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Tap the **BRIGHTNESS** tile repeatedly to select the brightness intensity.

Screen Timeout (Sleep)

After a period of inactivity, the phone screen turns off to conserve battery power. You can set the idle time before the screen turns off.





1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Screen timeout**, and then tap the time before the screen turns off.

Note: Extended screen timeout periods reduce the battery's talk and standby times.

Tip: To turn off and lock the screen quickly, press the Power/Lock button.

Daydream

Select your phone's screensaver when it's idle or docked.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Display & gestures**.
3. Tap **Daydream**, and then select a screensaver.
4. Tap .

Media Gesture




Select this option to allow other apps to recognize the 3-finger gesture. Otherwise, the 3-finger gesture will only output the screen to the optional HTC Media Link HD.

Note: The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Media gesture** to select or clear this option.




Motion Launch Gestures

Configure the Motion Launch gesture from this setting. See [Motion Launch](#) for details.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Motion Launch gestures** and enable this feature.

Calibrate the Screen

Recalibrate the screen if you feel that the screen orientation does not respond properly to the way you hold the phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **GSensor calibration**.
3. Place the phone on a flat surface, and then tap **CALIBRATE**.
4. After the recalibration process, tap **OK**.

HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio

Turn the HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio on and off and select a sound mode.




- See [HTC BoomSound with Dolby Audio](#) for details.

Sound & Notification Settings

The Sound & notification settings menu lets you control your phone's audio, from ringtones and alerts to touch tones and notifications.

Sound Profile and Vibrate

Use the following settings for such features as silent mode, vibrate, and overall phone volume.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification > Sound profile**.
3. Select **Normal**, **Vibrate**, or **Silent**.
4. To set your phone to always vibrate for calls in addition to any ringer settings, select the **Vibrate** option below **Volumes**.

Note: If you selected **Vibrate** as your sound profile (step 2), your phone will vibrate for all notifications and incoming calls.

5. Tap .

Volumes




You can separately adjust your phone's multimedia, ringtone and notifications, and alarm volumes.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification > Volumes**.
3. Drag the volume sliders on the screen to adjust the ringtone and notifications, music and videos, and alarm volumes.
4. Tap **DONE**.

Note: You can adjust the ringer volume in standby mode (or the earpiece volume during a call) by pressing the **Volume button**.




Notification and Alarm Sound

You can set the notification and alarm sound.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification > Volumes**.
3. Tap **Notification sound** or **Alarm**.
4. Select the sound you want and tap **APPLY**.




Use Interruptions

Use Interruptions to set a schedule when you don't want to be disturbed such as during meetings or bed time.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification > Interruptions**.
3. Tap **When calls and notifications arrive**, and then select the interrupt mode.
4. Under PRIORITY INTERRUPTIONS, enable events that are always allowed to interrupt during the downtime schedule.
5. Under DOWNTIME, set a schedule for your selected priority interruptions.

Incoming Calls - Ringtone

You can select and assign ringtones for your incoming calls. Your phone provides a variety of ringtones that you can set as the default ringtone of your phone.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification > Ringtone**.
3. Tap the ringtone you want to use, and then tap **APPLY**.




❖ The ringtone briefly plays when selected.

Note: To set a sound file as ringtone, see [Set a Song as a Ringtone](#).

Incoming Calls - Other Options

Enable **Quiet ring on pickup** so your phone lowers the ringtone volume the moment you pick it up to answer a call. When your phone is in your bag or pocket, enable **Pocket mode** so the phone rings louder when you have an incoming call. Tap the **Flip to mute** option to mute the phone just by flipping it over.




You can choose to enable or disable the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** incoming call features.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**.
3. Select or clear the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** options to enable or disable the features.
4. Tap **Flip to mute** and then select the mute setting.

For more information, see [Motion Gestures](#).




System Sound Settings

The System sound settings menu lets you select whether you hear tones when tapping numbers on the dialpad, selecting onscreen options, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**.
3. Select or customize options under the System menu.
 - **Keypad touch tones**: Select the short tones to use.
 - **Touch sounds**: Play sounds when making an onscreen selection.
 - **Screen lock sounds**: Play sounds when locking or unlocking the screen.
 - **Pulltorefresh sounds**: Play sounds when pulling the screen down to refresh content.
 - **Vibrate on touch**: Vibrate when tapping soft keys and during certain other instances.
 - **Emergency tone**: Set behavior when an emergency call is placed.




Notification - Flash Notifications

Tap this option to select when you want the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**.
3. Tap **Flash notifications**, and then select **Always** or **When screen is off**.

Notification - App Light Notifications


Tap this option to select which app events you want the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up and notify you.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**.
3. Tap **App light notifications**.
4. Tap an app for which you want to see the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up.

Notification - Lock Screen Notifications

These additional options let you choose how to display app notifications on the lock screen.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Sound & notification**.




3. Tap **App notifications**.
4. Select an app whose notifications you want to appear on the lock screen.
5. Select whether to block or to prioritize all notifications from the selected app.
6. Tap  twice.
7. Tap **When device is locked**, and then choose whether to show or not to show notifications.
8. Tap **Notifications access** to control HTC Dot View notifications.

Call Settings

Use these options to set call features, voicemail, and more.




Call Features

Use these options to set various call features.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.
3. Set the following:
 - **Auto answer calls**: Select this option to automatically answer incoming calls just by lifting the phone to your ear.
 - **Declined calls**: Select to enable text message and reminder options for declined calls.
 - **Save to People**: Select to add unknown numbers to the People list after the call.

Voicemail Settings

Use this menu to check your voicemail settings such as the voicemail service provider and voicemail number.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.
3. Tap **Voicemail service** or **Voicemail settings**.

Hearing Aids




Select the **Hearing aids** option to enable hearing aid compatibility that amplifies your phone's in-call volume.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.

3. Select the **Hearing aids** option.
4. Select **Sidetone** to get voice feedback in a hearing aid.

CDMA Call Settings





Use these options to enable hearing aid compatibility, and adjust several call settings, such as teletypewriter and DDTM.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.
3. Tap **CDMA call settings**.




TTY Mode

A TTY (teletypewriter, also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications phone that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY phones. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY phone to ensure that it supports digital wireless transmission. Your phone and TTY phone will connect using a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY phone, contact your TTY phone manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

When establishing your Sprint service, please call Sprint Customer Service using the state Telecommunications Relay Service (TRS) by first dialing     . Then provide the state TRS with this number: **866-727-4889**.

To turn TTY Mode on or off:

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.
3. Tap **CDMA call settings > TTY mode**.
4. Tap **TTY Full**, **TTY HCO**, or **TTY VCO**. Tap **TTY Off** to turn TTY mode off.

Note: When enabled, TTY mode may impair the audio quality of non-TTY phones connected to the headset jack.

Warning: 9-1-1 Emergency Calling




Sprint recommends that TTY users make emergency calls by other means, including Telecommunications Relay Services (TRS), analog cellular, and landline communications. Wireless TTY calls to 9-1-1 may be corrupted when received by public safety answering points (PSAPs), rendering some communications unintelligible. The problem encountered appears related to TTY equipment or software used by PSAPs. This matter has been brought to the attention of the FCC, and the wireless industry and the PSAP community are currently working to resolve this.

DDTM Mode

Select this option if you want to direct all calls to your voicemail when you are using data connection.

Other CDMA Call Settings

Select these options to enhance voice privacy, prepend numbers automatically, or use plus code dialing.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Call**.
3. Tap **CDMA call settings** and select or customize these options.
 - **Voice Privacy**: Select to enable enhanced privacy mode.
 - **Automatic prepend**: Select to automatically add “1” for long distance calls.
 - **Plus code dialing**: Tap to set plus code dialing. See [Place and Answer Calls](#) for details.

Internet Call Settings

Use these options to set up your Internet calling account.




- See [Internet Calls](#).

Apps Settings

Use the Apps menu to control your application settings or remove apps.

Uninstall Third-party Apps




Uninstall apps that you no longer need to save storage space.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Apps**.
3. On any of the tabs, tap the application you want to uninstall.
4. On the App info screen, tap **Uninstall**.
5. Tap **OK** to confirm.

Note: You cannot uninstall programs that are preinstalled on the phone.

Clear Application Cache and Data

Free up storage space and phone memory by deleting application cache and data.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Apps**.
3. Browse to the app you want to clear and then tap it.

Tip: Tap  to sort the apps list.

4. In the App info screen, tap **Clear data** or **Clear cache**.

Storage Settings

The storage settings menu lets you view and manage the phone storage.

Types of Storage

Your phone has the following storage types for your apps, data, and files.

- **Phone storage.** This storage combines both the internal storage, where apps, email, data, and text messages are stored, and the file storage, where photos, videos, and music files are kept. When you are running out of phone storage, you can free up space by uninstalling apps, changing download settings, or moving files to your computer or to an online storage service.
- **SD card** (Storage card). Use a storage card (purchased separately) for storing more files. You can also set apps such as Camera to store directly to the card.
- **USB storage.** When you plug in an external USB storage device (such as a USB flash drive or an SD card reader), you can view photos and videos stored on the device right from Gallery and play songs stored on the device in Music. You can also open PDFs and edit Office documents.

You need a special cable adapter to connect your phone and a USB storage device. Your phone supports USB storage devices (except portable hard drives) up to 64 GB.

- **Online storage.** If you're using an online storage account that's accessible from your phone, you can store your files to your online storage.

Copy Files To or From Your Phone

You can copy your music, photos, and other files to your phone.

1. Connect your phone to the computer using the supplied USB cable. You'll see options for viewing or importing files on the computer screen.
2. Choose to view files.
3. Copy the files from your computer to your phone, or vice versa.
4. After copying the files, disconnect the phone from the computer.

Make More Storage Space

As you use your phone, you'll accumulate data and fill its storage capacity over time. Here are some tips on how to increase storage space.

Run the Storage Wizard

Free up space in the phone storage by uninstalling apps and deleting files you no longer need. In Settings, tap **Storage** > **Make more space**.

Store Files in Google Drive

Photos, email attachments, and other documents can be stored in Google Drive and accessed anywhere you are. You can set the Camera app to automatically upload photos to Google Drive. See [Google Drive](#).

Note: Google Drive is a third-party app and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

Manage Photos and Videos

- Set the Camera app to automatically upload to a photo-sharing site or online storage. You can retrieve them from the photo-sharing site or online storage when needed.

Note: Using data services while uploading photos and videos may be costly. You may want to connect to Wi-Fi or disable auto upload of camera shots if you have a limited data plan.

- After taking continuous camera shots, keep only the best shot and discard the rest.
- After editing a photo or trimming a video, the original file is kept. You can delete original files or move them to online storage or to your computer.
- If you are only sending videos through MMS, use a lower resolution. High-resolution video takes up more space. In Camera settings, tap **Video Quality** to change the resolution.

Back Up Apps Data

Keep only the most recent data from apps on your phone. You can back up calendars, contacts, and bookmarks or export text messages, and personal dictionaries. See [Backup](#).

Disable Some Apps

Apps, even if not used often, may be running in the background and downloading data into the phone storage. If the app cannot be removed, you can disable it. In Settings, tap **Apps**, slide to the **ALL** tab and select the app that you want to disable. Tap **Disable**.




Encrypt Data on Your Phone

On the phone storage, you can encrypt data such as your accounts, settings, downloaded apps and their data, media, and other files. On a storage card, you can only encrypt files.

Set a lock screen PIN or password before starting encryption. Fully charge the battery and keep your phone connected to the power adapter during encryption. This process may take about an hour or so.

You cannot undo encryption on the phone storage. If you want to return to an unencrypted phone, you must perform a factory reset. Once you enable storage card encryption, only new files added after encryption will be encrypted. Files already on the card will not be encrypted. Also, storage card encryption doesn't reformat or erase your card. Encrypted files on the storage card can only be opened by the phone that encrypted them.

How to Encrypt Data on Your Phone

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Storage**.
3. Tap **Phone storage encryption**. Or, tap **Encrypt SD card content**.
4. Tap **NEXT**.
5. Enter the lock screen PIN or password, and tap **NEXT**.
6. Tap **ENABLE ENCRYPTION**.

During phone storage encryption, the phone may restart a few times. When storage encryption is complete, enter your PIN or password.


Note: If you turn off SD card encryption to stop encrypting new files, previously encrypted files will remain encrypted. To access these files, you must enable encryption again for your storage card.

Power Settings

Use the Power settings to check the phone's battery, enable Power saver mode, and more.

Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode

Power saver mode helps to increase battery life. It reduces the usage of phone features that drain the battery such as the display and data connection.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
2. Tap  below the **SAVER** tile to choose which phone features to conserve power for.

Note: If **Data connection** is selected, your phone automatically disconnects from the mobile network after 15 minutes when the screen is off and the data connection is idle (no download activity, streaming, or data usage). It reconnects and then disconnects periodically when the data connection is idle to save battery power.

Note: Keep in mind though that the **Sleep mode** option for the data connection in **Settings > Power**, when enabled, overrides power saver mode.

3. Tap the **ON/OFF** switch next to Power saver to turn Power saver mode on or off.




Use Extreme Power Saving Mode

In times when you don't need to use much of your phone, turn Extreme power saving mode on to extend battery life longer. In this mode, standby time can last longer than usual, and you can only use the most basic functions such as phone calls, text messaging, and email.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
2. Tap the **EXT SAVER** tile to turn the mode on. Or to set when to automatically switch this mode on, tap below **■■■** the tile.
3. Select the check box, and then choose at which battery level the mode will turn on.

Check Battery Usage




See a ranking list of apps that are using the battery. You can also see how much and how long the battery has been used for each app.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Power** > **Battery usage**.
3. Tap an app to check how it's using the battery. You'll see how much battery power is used by resources such as the CPU for the app and other use details.

Tip: If you see buttons while viewing an app's battery use details, you can tap them to adjust settings that affect battery usage, stop the app, and more.




Check Battery History

Check how long you've been using the phone since the last charge. You can also see a chart that shows how long the screen has been on, and how long you've been using connections like the mobile network or Wi-Fi.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Power** > **History**.
3. If you've used the phone for a long time since the last charge, swipe left or right to scale the graph that details battery usage over time. You can also slide your fingers together or apart to scale the graph.

Display the Battery Percentage

You can check the percentage of remaining battery power right from the status bar.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Power**.
3. Select **Show battery level**.

Battery Saving Tips

How long the battery can last before it needs recharging depends on how you use your phone. The power management features of your phone helps increase battery life. In times when you need to extend the battery life more, try out some of these tips.

Check Power Usage

Monitoring your battery usage helps you identify what's using the most power so you can choose what to do about it. For details, see [Check Battery Usage](#).

Manage Your Connections

- **Turn off wireless connections you're not using.** To turn on or off connections such as mobile data, Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth, go to Settings and tap their ON/OFF switches.
- **Turn GPS on only when a precise location is needed.** To prevent some apps from using GPS in the background, clear the **Device sensors** option in **Settings > Location > Mode**. Select it only when you need your precise location while using navigation or location-based apps. For more information on location services, see [Location Settings](#).
- If the **Sleep mode** option in **Settings > Power** is enabled, at low peak times, your phone will turn off the data connection after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage). The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.
- Turn on Airplane mode when you don't need any wireless connections and you don't want to receive calls or messages. For details, see [Airplane Mode](#).

Manage Your Display

Lowering the brightness, letting the display sleep when not in use, and keeping it simple helps save battery power.

- Use automatic brightness (the default), or manually lower the brightness.
- Set the screen timeout to a shorter time.
- Don't use a live wallpaper for your Home screen. Animation effects are nice to show off to other people but they drain your battery. Changing your wallpaper to a plain, black background can also help a little. The less color is displayed, the less battery is used.

For more details, see [Display & Gestures Settings](#).

Manage Your Apps




- Install the latest software and application updates. Updates sometimes include battery performance improvements.
- Uninstall or disable apps that you never use.

Many apps run processes or sync data in the background even when you're not using them. If there are apps that you don't need anymore, uninstall them. See [Uninstall Third-party Apps](#).

If an app came preloaded and can't be uninstalled, disabling the app can still prevent it from continuously running or syncing data. In **Settings > Apps**, swipe to the **ALL** tab, tap the app, and then tap **Disable**.

Limit Background Data and Sync

Background data and sync can use a lot of battery power if you have many apps syncing data in the background. It's recommended not to let apps sync data too often. Determine which apps can be set with longer sync times, or sync manually.

- In Settings, tap **Accounts & sync** and check what types of data are being synced in your online accounts. When the battery is starting to run low, temporarily disable syncing some data.
- If you have many email accounts, consider prolonging the sync time of some accounts. In the Mail app, select an account, tap  > **Settings > Sync, Send & Receive**, and then adjust the settings under Sync schedule.
- When you're not traveling from one place to another, sync weather updates of only your current location, rather than in all of your named cities. Open the Weather app, and then tap  > **Edit** to remove unneeded cities.
- Choose widgets wisely. Some widgets constantly sync data. Consider removing the ones that are not important from your Home screen.
- In Play Store, tap  > **Settings > Auto-update apps > Do not auto-update apps** if you're fine with updating apps from Play Store manually.

More Battery Saving Tips

To squeeze in a little bit more battery power, try these tips.




- Tone down the ringtone and media volume.
- Minimize the use of vibration or sound feedback. In Settings, tap **Sound & notification** and choose which ones you don't need and can disable.
- Check your apps' settings as you may find more options to optimize the battery.

Language & Keyboard Settings

Your phone's Language & keyboard settings let you select a language for the phones screens and menus, as well as manage a personal user dictionary.




Change the Phone Language

Changing the language adjusts the keyboard layout, date and time formatting, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard**.
3. Tap **Language** and tap the language you want to use.




Spell Checker

Turn this feature on to underline misspelled words as you type.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard**.
3. Tap the ON/OFF switch next to **Spell checker**.

Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input




The Language & keyboard settings let you select a preferred input method, control keyboard settings, and more.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input**.
3. Change any of these settings.
 - **Keyboard selection:** Add or remove languages from the touch input language list.
 - **Bilingual prediction:** Activate word prediction for a second language.
 - Enable or disable keyboard settings including sound and vibration feedback, show or hide arrow keys, and enable trace keyboard.
 - **Advanced settings**
 - **Trace color:** Select the color to use when using the Trace keyboard.
 - **Quick ".":** Enable this option if you want to insert a period every time you double tap the space bar.
 - **Advanced settings: Prediction preference**
 - **Word prediction:** Enable the word prediction feature.
 - **Next word prediction:** Turn on suggestion options for the next word while entering text.
 - **Advanced settings: Finger touch calibration**
 - **Calibration tool:** Recalibrate the keyboard if you feel that the keys are not responding accurately to your taps.
 - **Reset calibration:** Reset the calibration back to factory default.

- **Personal dictionary:** Add, edit, or remove words in the predictive text dictionary. For more information, see [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).
- **Tips & Help:** Get tips and help related to the onscreen keyboard.




Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing

This option lets you choose the input language for Google voice typing, block offensive words, or download offline speech recognition.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard** > **Google voice typing**.




Speech Settings

Use these settings to adjust your Google Voice Search preferences or select your default text-to-speech output.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Language & keyboard**.
3. Change any of these settings.
 - **Voice Input:** Tap to change the default voice search language, speech output, and more
 - **Text-to-speech output:** Tap to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to speech synthesis demo.

Date & Time Settings

By default, your phone automatically uses the network-provided date, time zone, and time. However, you can set the date, time zone, and time manually if you need to.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Date & time**.
3. Clear the **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone** options.
4. Tap **Set date**, change the date and tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Set time**, adjust the time and tap **OK**.
6. Tap **Select time zone**, and then select the time zone in the list.
7. Select the **Use 24-hour format** option to toggle between using a 12-hour or 24-hour (military) time format.

8. Tap **Choose date format**, and then select how you want dates to display on your phone. The selected date format also applies to the date displayed in the Alarm Clock.




Printing

Print from anywhere you are using Google Cloud Print™. For more information about Cloud Print, see google.com/cloudprint.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Printing** > **Cloud Print**.

Activate This Device

If your phone has not been activated on the Sprint network, you can use the **Activate this device** menu option to begin the process.




1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **Activate this device**. Follow the onscreen prompts to begin activation.

❖ If your phone is already activated, you'll see a device Self Service screen with account information, usage details, and more.

System Updates

From time to time, system software updates for your phone may be available. Your phone can automatically check and notify you if an update is available. You can download and install the update to your phone. Depending on the type of update, the update may erase all your personal data and customized settings, and it could also remove any programs you have installed. Make sure that you have backed up the information and files you want to keep.




Note: Checking and downloading system software updates require data access that will count towards your monthly data allowance.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **System updates**.
3. Tap any of these available settings:
 - **Update profile:** Update your online user profile information. See [Update Your Profile](#) for details.
 - **Update PRL:** Update the Preferred Roaming List (PRL). See [Update Your PRL](#) for details.
 - **UICC Unlock:** Unlock the UICC and use a UICC card from other service providers. For more information about UICC unlock, contact Sprint.

- **HTC software update:** Update the phone's operating system. See [Update Your Phone Software](#) for details.

About Your Phone

The About menu lets you access important phone information and view legal and safety information.

1. Tap  >  >  **Settings**.
2. Tap **About**.
3. Scroll through the list and select options to view or customize information.
 - **Hardware and software version:** Displays the phone hardware and software version.
 - **Software updates:** Check if there are is a new software update available for your phone.
 - **Usage and error reporting:** Send error, preference, and usage reports to HTC.
 - **Help:** Enable quick tips to appear on the screen.
 - **Network:** Check the operator, signal strength, mobile network type, and more.
 - **Phone identity:** Check the phone's name, model number, IMEI, SIM ID, MEID current user name, and number.
 - **Software information:** View software related information such as the Android, HTC Sense, and software versions.
 - **Legal information:** View HTC legal information, privacy alert, Google legal information and open source licenses.

Copyright Information

©2015 Sprint. Sprint and the logo are trademarks of Sprint. Other marks are trademarks of their respective owners.

Portions of this document ©2015 HTC Corporation. All rights reserved.

Dolby Audio manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and Dolby Audio are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

HTC, the HTC logo, HTC One, the HTC One logo, HTC BlinkFeed, HTC BoomSound, HTC Connect, HTC Dot View, HTC Sense, Motion Launch, UltraPixel, VideoPic, Zoe, and all other HTC product and feature names are trademarks or registered trademarks in the U.S. and/or other countries of HTC Corporation and its affiliates. Zoodles and Kid Mode are trademarks of Inquisitive Minds, Inc.

The HD Voice logo is a trademark of the GSMA Ltd.

Google, Android, Android Beam, Gmail, Google+, Google Chrome, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Google Maps, Google Now, Google Play, Google Voice Search, Hangouts, Google Wallet, and YouTube are trademarks of Google Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, ActiveSync, Windows Media, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Wi-Fi and Miracast are registered trademarks of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Facebook is a trademark of Facebook, Inc.

Twitter is a trademark of Twitter, Inc., and is used under license.

DLNA and the DLNA disc logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Digital Living Network Alliance. All rights reserved. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

iCloud, iMessage, iPhone, iTunes, Mac, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc. registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Dropbox and the Dropbox logo are trademarks of Dropbox, Inc.

Flickr is a trademark of Yahoo! Inc.

Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States, and other countries and used with permission. AllPlay and the AllPlay icon are trademarks of Qualcomm Connected Experiences, Inc., and used with permission.

BLACKFIRE RESEARCH™ is a Registered Trademark (No. 3,898,359) of BLACKFIRE RESEARCH CORP.

Scout® is a trademark of Telenav, Inc.

Polaris Office is a trademark of Infraware, Inc.

LinkedIn is a registered trademark or trademark of LinkedIn Corporation and its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

Instagram is a trademark of Instagram, LLC.

microSD and microSDHC are registered trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

Foursquare is a trademark of Foursquare Labs, Inc. ("Foursquare") in the U.S. and other countries.

LTE is a trademark of European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) registered for the benefit of its members.

All other trademarks and service marks mentioned herein, including company names, product names, service names and logos, are the property of their respective owners and their use herein does not indicate an affiliation with, association with, or endorsement of or by HTC Corporation. Not all marks listed necessarily appear in this User Guide.

HTC software and apps can be used with materials that you own or are lawfully authorized to use and/or duplicate. Unauthorized use and/or duplication of copyrighted material may be a violation of copyright law in the United States and/or other countries/ regions. Violation of U.S. and international copyright laws may subject you to significant civil and/or criminal penalties. HTC Corporation shall not be held responsible for any damages or losses (direct or indirect) that you may incur as a result of using these software and apps.

Screen images contained herein are simulated. HTC shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein, nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from furnishing this material.

The information is provided "as is" without warranty of any kind and is subject to change without notice. HTC also reserves the right to revise the content of this document at any time without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or storing in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form without prior written permission of HTC.

For Assistance

The following topics address areas of support for your phone, including troubleshooting, specifications, account information, warranty information, and customer service contact information.

Troubleshooting

Check the questions and answers below for troubleshooting solutions for common phone issues.

Check Here First

Question: Phone freezes/operation is unstable.

Answer: Restart the phone. If the screen is on and responsive, press and hold the Power/Lock button and then tap **Restart**. If the screen won't turn on, press and hold the Power/Lock button for more than 10 seconds until the phone restarts. Keep in mind that you could lose any or all of the data you're working on when you restart the phone. For details, see [Turn Your Phone On and Off](#).

Question: Operation is unstable after a new application was installed.

Answer: The newly installed application may be the cause. Uninstall the application. See [Uninstall an App](#).

Question: Cannot use phone, mail, or Internet.

Answer 1: Check whether you are where signal is weak or out of service area.

Answer 2: Restart the phone. For details, see [Turn Your Phone On and Off](#).

Answer 3: Is the phone in Airplane mode? To check that Airplane mode is cancelled:

- Tap  >  >  **Settings**. Check if **Airplane mode** is on or off

Answer 4: Is data communication disabled? To check that data communication is enabled:

- Tap  >  >  **Settings**. Check if **Mobile data** is on.

Question: Battery level goes down quickly.

Answer: Are you where signal is weak or have been out of service area for a long period? Calling where signal is weak or being out of service area uses a lot of battery. For tips on how to save battery power, see [Battery Saving Tips](#).

Question: Cannot install applications.

Answer: Applications cannot be installed with only a little free space on the phone or SD card. To check free space, see [Storage Settings](#). Applications not supported by your phone cannot be installed. To install third-party apps, see [Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs](#).

Question: Cannot unlock screen.

Answer: Restart the phone. If the screen won't unlock, press and hold the Power/Lock button for more than 10 seconds until the phone restarts. Keep in mind that you could lose any or all of the data you're working on when you restart the phone. For details, see [Turn Your Phone On and Off](#).

Specifications

The following tables list your phone's and battery's specifications.

Phone Specifications

Item	Description
Weight	157g ± 5g
Continuous Talk Time*	3G: Approx. 1295 minutes GSM: Approx. 1520 minutes
Continuous Standby Time*	3G: Approx. 25290 minutes GSM: Approx. 23460 minutes
Charging Time	Approx. 180 minutes
Dimensions	144.6 x 69.7 x 9.61 mm
Maximum Output	3G: 0.25 W 4G: 0.2 W GSM: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ 850/900: 2 W■ 1800/1900: 1 W
Communication Speed	LTE 2xCA – DL: 300 Mbps, UL: 50 Mbps HSDPA: 42.2 Mbps, HSUPA: 5.76 Mbps

*Battery times (talk time, standby time, and more) are subject to network and phone usage.

A Standby time specification ("specification") is an industry standard that is only intended to allow comparison of different mobile devices under the same circumstances. Power consumption in a standby state is strongly dependent on factors including but not limited to network, settings, location, movement, signal strength and cell traffic. Comparisons of different mobile devices using such a specification can therefore only be done in a controlled laboratory environment. When using any mobile device in real life circumstances for which the mobile device is intended, the standby time could be considerably lower and will be strongly dependent on the factors as mentioned above.

Battery Specifications

Item	Description
Voltage	3.83 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	2840 mAh

Sprint Account Information and Help

Find out about account passwords and information about managing your account and finding help.

Sprint Account Passwords

You will need to create passwords to help protect access to your personal account information, your voicemail account, and your data services account. As a Sprint customer, you enjoy unlimited access to all your information.

Account User Name and Password

If you are the account owner, you will create an account user name and password when you sign on to sprint.com/mysprint. (Click **Sign in/Register** and then click **Sign up now!** to get started.) If you are not the account owner (if someone else receives the bill for your Sprint service), you can get a sub-account password at sprint.com/mysprint.

Voicemail Password

You'll create your voicemail password when you set up your voicemail. See [Voicemail \(Traditional\)](#) for more information on your voicemail password.

Data Services Password

With your Sprint phone, you may elect to set up an optional data services password to control access and authorize purchases.

For more information, or to change your passwords, sign on to sprint.com/mysprint or call Sprint Customer Service at **1-888-211-4727**.

Manage Your Account













Manage your Sprint account from your computer, your Sprint phone, or any other phone.

Online: sprint.com/mysprint

- Access your account information.
- Check your minutes used (depending on your Sprint service plan).
- View and pay your bill.

- Enroll in Sprint online billing and automatic payment.
- Purchase accessories.
- Shop for the latest Sprint phones.
- View available Sprint service plans and options.
- Learn more about data services and other products like games, ringtones, screen savers, and more.

From Your Sprint Phone

1. Tap  >  . (If your screen is locked, press the Power/Lock button to turn on the display and then drag  up to unlock the screen.)
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap    to check minute usage and account balance.
 - Tap    to make a payment.
 - Tap    to access a summary of your Sprint service plan or get answers to other questions.

Sprint Support Services

Sprint 411 and Sprint Operator Services let you easily access information and calling assistance from your Sprint phone.

Sprint 411


Sprint 411 gives you access to a variety of services and information, including residential, business, and government listings; movie listings or show times; driving directions, restaurant reservations, and major local event information. You can get up to three pieces of information per call, and the operator can automatically connect your call at no additional charge.

There is a per-call charge to use Sprint 411, and you will be billed for airtime.

- Tap  >  , and then tap     .

Sprint Operator Services

Sprint Operator Services provides assistance when you place collect calls or when you place calls billed to a local telephone calling card or third party.

- Tap  >  , and then tap   .

For more information or to see the latest in products and services, visit us online at sprint.com/mysprint.

Index

- 3**
- 3-way Calling 96
- 4**
- 4G 134
- A**
- Accessibility
 - TalkBack 252
- Accessory Jack 4
- Account Passwords 281
- Activation 19
- Add to Album 161
- Airplane Mode 38
- Alarm 190
- Alarm Sound 244-245
- Always Smile 170
- Android Beam 228
- Answer a Call 86
- App Notifications 57
- Applications
 - Clear App Cache 266
 - Install Third-Party Apps 250
 - Uninstall 266
- Apps 31
 - Disable 268
 - Find and install 47
 - Open 34
 - Open from Lock Screen 34
 - Recent Apps 34
 - Refresh Content 35
 - Request refunds 48
 - Uninstall 48
 - Update 48
- Apps Screen
 - Arrange Apps 36
 - Group Apps 37
 - Hide/Unhide Apps 37
 - Move Apps and Folders 36
 - Remove Apps from Folder 37
- B**
- Back Key 28
- Backup 254
 - Options 255
 - Use HTC Backup 255
- Basic Photo Editing 167
 - Adjust 167
 - Choose 167
 - Custom Filters 168
 - Draw 168
 - Filters 168
 - Retouch 169
- Battery
 - Charge 9
 - Check History 270
 - Check Usage 270
 - Extreme Power Saving Mode 270
 - Power Saver Mode 269
 - Save Power 271
 - Settings 269
- Battery Percentage 270
- Battery Saving Tips 271
- Beam Content 229
- Block List 90
- Bluetooth 224
 - Car Kit 225
 - Disconnect Device 226
 - Headset 225
 - Receive Files 227
 - Reconnect Phone 225
 - Send Information 226
 - Unpair Device 226
- Bokeh Mode 150
- Bonus Storage 210
- BoomSound Settings 260
- Brightness 259
 - Maximum Level 259
- Browser
 - Add Bookmarks 139
 - Browsing History 139
 - Find Text 138
 - Help 140
 - Options 140
 - Private Browsing 140
 - Tabs 138
- Burst Shots 150

C

- Calculator 186
- Calendar 186
 - Create Event 187
 - Edit Event 187
 - Invites 189
 - Make Call From 84
 - Share Events 189
 - Show or Hide 188
 - Snooze Reminders 190
 - View events 188
- Call Forwarding 97
- Call History 88
 - Block Caller 90
 - Make Call From 88
 - Open 89
 - Prepend a Number 89
 - Save a Number 89
- Call Log 88
- Call Screen 86
- Call Services
 - Call Forwarding 97
 - Call Waiting 97
 - Caller ID 97
- Call Waiting 97
- Caller ID 97
- Camera 145
 - Capture Mode 146
 - Close the App 147
 - Getting Started 145
 - Manual Settings 157
 - Record Video 149
 - Set Flash 147
 - Take a picture 147
 - Tips 148
 - Use Volume Buttons 147
 - Zooming 146
- Camera Flash 147
- Camera Mode
 - Bokeh 150
 - Burst 150
 - Customized 157
 - Pan 360 155
 - Selfie 151
 - Video 149
- Camera Scenes
 - HDR 156
 - Panorama 155

- Slow Motion 156
- Camera Settings 157
- Car Kit 225
- Change the Language 272
- Charger/Accessory Jack 4
- Child Profile 204
- Chrome 138
- Clear App Cache 266
- Clock 190
 - Check Time 190
 - Set Date 190
 - Stopwatch 191
 - Timer 192
 - World Clock 191
- Conference Calling 96
- Connections Optimizer 218
- Contacts 101
- Contacts List, Contacts 101
- Continuous Shots Editing 170
- Creative Effects 172

D

- Data Services 134
 - Password 281
 - Status indicators 135
 - Track Usage 136
 - User name 135
- Data Usage 136
- Date & Time 274
- Daydream 259
- DDTM Mode 266
- Display 258
 - Auto-rotate Screen 258
 - Font Size 258
- DLNA
 - HTC Connect 230
- Double Exposure 175
- Draft Message 115
- Drag 13

E

- Earpiece 4
- Elements 177
- Email
 - Account Settings 132
 - Add Account 125
 - Add Exchange ActiveSync account 126
 - Compose and Send 128

- Delete Accounts 132
- Delete Messages 130
- Delete Search 130
- Make Call From 84
- Manage Email Messages 129
- Move Messages 129
- Read and Reply 128
- Send Gmail 122
- Smart Sync 132
- Email Account
 - Add Exchange ActiveSync 245
 - Add POP3, IMAP 245
- Emergency Numbers 83
- Emoji 39
- Encrypt Data 268
- Enhanced 9-1-1 (E 9-1-1) 83
- Enter Text 39
- Event
 - Create 187
 - Edit 187
- Exchange ActiveSync
 - Add account 126
 - Features 130
 - Flag Email 131
 - Meeting Request 131
 - Out of Office Reply 131
- Extended Home Screen 54
- Extreme Power Saving Mode 270

F

- Face Fusion 177
- Face Tracking 90
- Facebook 193
- Factory Data Reset 257
- Feeds Panel 58
 - Off 59
- Files
 - Transfer between phone and computer 219
- Flash 5
- Flick 14
- Font 244
- Free Storage 210
- Front Indicator Light 57

G

- Gallery 158
 - Change Video Playback Speed 164

- Search Photos 163
- Trim Videos 165
- View Albums 159
- View Pan 360 Photos 164
- View pictures and videos 158
- View Timeline 158
- Visual Search 163
- Gestures 12
- GIF Creator 170
- Global Roaming Mode 236
- Global Use 235
- Glove Mode 258
- Gmail
 - Add Account 124
 - Create account 45
 - Get Help 125
 - Inbox 123
 - Read and reply 123
 - Reply Email 124
 - Send message 122
- Google
 - Chrome 138
 - Create account 45
 - Hangouts 185
 - Sign in 46
- Google Account
 - Add Account 246
 - Forgot Password 246
- Google Drive 210
 - Bonus Space 210
 - Check Space 211
 - Upload Photos and Videos 211
- Google Location Service 248
- Google Maps 181
 - Get Around Maps 182
 - Get Directions 183
 - Moving in Maps 182
 - Search Location 182
- Google Now 141
- Google Play
 - Find and install apps 47
 - Help 49
 - Store 46
- Google Play Music 200
- Google Search 140
- Google Voice Search 141
- Google Voice Typing 43, 274
- Google Wallet 203
- Group Messaging 114

Group Text 114

H

Hangouts 185

HD Voice 81

HDR 156

Headset Jack 4

Hearing Aids 264

History

 Erase 90

Home Key 28

Home Screen 27, 53

 Add App Shortcuts 65

 Add or Remove Widget Panel 64

 Add Widgets 64

 Arrange Widget Panels 64

 Change Main Home Screen 63

 Change Widget Settings 65

 Customize 62

 Extended 54

 Feeds Panel 58

 HTC Sense Home Widget 66

 Launch Bar 63

 Move or Remove Items 65

 Organize Widget Panels 64

 Settings 243

 Wallpaper 62

HTC BlinkFeed 58

 Customize 60

 Customize Highlights 61

 Off 59

 Post Status 62

 Remove Content 62

 Save Articles 61

 Select Feeds 60

 Show and Add Topics 60

 Show Your Content 60

 Subscribe to Other Regions 61

 Subscribe to RSS 61

HTC BoomSound 203

HTC Car 180

 Customize 181

 Explore Places 181

 Find Places 180

 Make Calls 181

 Play Music 181

 Receive Calls 181

 Voice Commands 180

HTC Connect 230

 AllPlay 232

 Blackfire 233

 Share Media 230

HTC Dot View 216

HTC Help 217

HTC Location Service 248

HTC Sense Home Widget 66

HTC Sense Input Settings 273

HTC Sync Manager 211

 Get Help 213

 Install 212

 Transfer iPhone 212

I

iCloud 24

Image Match 163

IMAP Email 125

Inbox

 Organize 127

Incoming Call

 Answer 86

 Mute Ringtone 86

 Reject 86

International Data Roaming 238

Internet 112

Internet Calls 98

 Add Account 98

 Make an Internet Call 98

iPhone 212

iPhone Transfer 23

 iCloud 24

K

Keyboard

 Touchscreen 39

Keyboard Calibration 43

Keyboard Settings 273

Kid Mode 204

L

Language Settings 272

LED 57

LED Notification Settings 58

Location Settings 247

 On or Off 247

Lock Screen

 Customize 69

Settings 243
Unlock 49
Lock Screen Notifications 70
Long Distance Calls 84

M

Mail
 Inbox 126
Maps 181
Media Gesture 260
Messages
 Back Up Messages 118
 Block Messages 118
 Delete Messages 118
 Secure Box 117
Messaging 112
microSD Card Tray 4
MMS
 Create Slideshow 113
 Reply 115
 Send 113
 Send messages 113
Mobile Hotspot 223
Motion Gestures
 Flip to Mute 17
 Pick Up to Lower Volume 18
 Pocket Mode 18
 Rotate Screen 19
Motion Launch 74
 On or Off 75
 Quick Call 79
 Troubleshooting 80
 Wake and Unlock 76
 Wake Phone 76
 Wake to Camera 78
 Wake to HTC BlinkFeed Screen 77
 Wake to Widget Panel 77
Motion Launch Settings 260
Motion Launch Snap 78
Multimedia Messaging 113
Music
 Find Music Videos 200
 Google Play Music 200
 Listen to Music 195
 Playlists 197
 Sprint Music Plus 201
 Trim 198
 Update Covers, Artist Photos 198
 View Lyrics 199

N

Nano SIM Card Tray 4
NASCAR Mobile 179
Navigation 179
 Google Maps 181
 Scout 184
NFC 228
Notification Icons 55
Notification LED 57
Notification Sound 244
Notifications 55
Notifications Panel 56

O

Object Removal 171
One Gallery 166
Online Accounts
 Manage 246
Online Storage
 Google Drive 210
Onscreen Keyboard
 Calibrate 43
 Enter Text by Speaking 43
 Enter Text, Typing 39
 Trace Keyboard 42
 Word Prediction 41
Onscreen Navigation 28
Optimize Phone Storage 268

P

Pan 360 155
 View 164
Parent Dashboard 205
People 101
 Add an Entry 104
 Backup Contacts 110
 Contact Groups 109
 Copy 106
 Copy Contacts 106
 Delete an Entry 106
 Edit an Entry 105
 Find 103
 Import 106
 Import Contacts 106
 Make Call From 88
 Merge 107
 My Profile 103
 Private Contacts 111

- Send Contacts 108
- Phone
 - Change Dialer Layout 82
 - Dialer 82
 - Ringtone 100
- Phone Calls 81
 - Answer 86
 - Emergency Numbers 83
 - Extension Number 83
 - From Calendar Event 84
 - From Call History 88
 - From Email Messages 84
 - From People 88
 - From Text Messages 84
 - International 84
 - Missed Call 85
 - Phone Dialpad 82
 - Smart Dial 82
 - Use Speed Dial 84
 - Using phone keypad 82
- Phone Layout (illustration) 3
- Phone Number 37
- Phone Update
 - Software 50
- Photo Blog 208
- Photo Editor 167
 - Basic 167
 - Continuous Shots 170
 - Creative Effects 172
- Photo Shapes 173
- Photo Tips 148
- Photos & Videos
 - View by Location 160
- Pictures
 - Take with camera 147
 - View 158
- Pinch 15
- Play Music 200
- Play Store 46
 - Find and install apps 47
- Playlists
 - Create 197
 - Delete 197
 - Play 197
- Plus (+) Code Dialing 236
- Plus Code Dialing 85
- POP3 Email 125
- Post Spelling Check 273
- Power Key 4

- Power Off 11
- Power On 11
- Power Options
 - Restart 11
 - Turn Phone Off 11
 - Turn Phone On 11
- Power Saver 269
- Predictive Text 41
 - Add to Dictionary 42
 - Manage Dictionary 42
 - Second Language 41
- Press and Flick 14
- Prevent Notifications 220
- Prismatic 175
- Private Message Box 117

Q

- Quick Call 79
- Quick Settings 29
 - Customize 30

R

- Radio Frequency Exposure Operating
 - Instructions 1
- Recent Apps Key 28
- Recoverable Data 1
- Reject a Call 86
- Reset Phone 257
- Restart Phone 11
- Restore Phone
 - From Online Storage 26
- Ringtone
 - Settings 244
 - Trim 198

S

- Saved Information 227
- Scout 184
- Screen
 - Auto-rotate Screen 258
 - Calibrate 260
 - Font Size 258
 - Glove Mode 258
- Screen Timeout 259
- Screen Unlock
 - Face Unlock 249
 - Password 250
 - Pattern 249

- PIN 249
- Screenshots 30
- Scribble 206
 - Compose Note 207
 - Create Photo Blog 208
 - Notebook 209
 - Sharing a Note 209
- SD Card 7
 - Format 9
 - Insert 7
 - Remove 8
 - Unmount 8
- Search 140
 - By Voice 141
 - Set Options 141
 - Using Google 140
 - Using Google Now 141
- Search Info 140
- Security Settings
 - Digital Certificates 251
 - Lock Screen 250
 - Screen Lock 248
- Selfie Mode 151
- Sequence Shot 171
- Settings 241
 - About Your Phone 276
 - Accessibility 251
 - Accounts 245
 - Airplane Mode 242
 - Applications 266
 - Backup 254
 - Bluetooth 242
 - Call 264
 - Date & Time 274
 - Device Activation 275
 - Display & gestures 258
 - Get Content From Another Phone 258
 - Getting To 29
 - Hearing Aids 264
 - HTC BoomSound 260
 - HTC Connect 243
 - Language & Keyboard 272
 - Location Settings 247
 - Mobile Data 242
 - Overview 241
 - Personalize 243
 - Power 269
 - Printing 275
 - Quick Settings 29

- Reset 257
- Screen Capture 30
- Security Settings 248, 251
- Sound & Notification 261
- Storage 267
- Sync Accounts 245
- System Updates 275
- TTY Mode 265
- Wi-Fi 242
- Wi-Fi Calling 242
- Setup Screens 20
- Shapes 172
- Silent Mode 38
- SIM Card 5, 235
 - Insert 6
- Sleep Mode 259
- Slide 13
- Slow Motion Video 156
- Smart Dial 82
- Smart Lock 249
- Smart Sync 132
- SMS
 - Back Up Messages 118
 - Reply 115
 - Send 112
- Social Network Account
 - Add Account 245
- Sound
 - Incoming Calls 262
 - Interruptions 262
 - Notification, Alarm 261
 - Other Options 262
 - Ringtones 262
 - Sound Profile 261
 - System Sounds 263
 - Vibrate 261
 - Volumes 261
- Sound Enhancements 195
- Speaker 4
- Speech Settings 274
- Speed Dial 85
- Spell Checker 273
- Split Capture 154
- Spread 15
- Sprint 411 282
- Sprint Account Management 281
- Sprint Hotspot 223
- Sprint Music Plus 201
- Sprint Operator Services 282

- Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service 235
- Status Bar 54
- Status Icons 56
- Stopwatch 191
- Storage
 - Copy Files 267
 - Encrypt Data 268
 - Optimize 268
 - Phone Storage 267
 - Photos and Videos 268
 - Storage Types 267
 - Storage Wizard 268
 - Transfer Files to Online Storage 268
- Storage Wizard 268
- Sweep Panorama 155
- Swipe 13

T

- TalkBack 252
 - Assign Shortcuts 253
 - Context Menus 253
 - Gestures 252
 - Language 254
 - Reading Speed 254
 - Turn On 252
- Tap 12
- Text
 - Cut and Paste 44
 - Edit 44
 - Share 44
- Text Entry 39
- Text Message
 - Make Call From 84
- Text Messaging
 - Send messages 112
- Themes 71
 - Bookmark 72
 - Create 72
 - Delete 74
 - Download 71
 - Edit 72
 - Mix and Match 73
 - Search 74
 - Share 74
- Three-finger Gesture 16
- Three-finger Tap 17
- Timer 192
- Touch 12
- Touch and Hold 12

- Touch Gestures 12
- Touchscreen 4
 - Keyboard 39
 - Navigation 12
 - Turn off 49
- Transfer Content 22, 258
 - From Android Phone 22
 - iPhone 23
 - Other Ways to Transfer 25
 - To/From Your Computer 25
 - Transfer Contacts 25
 - Using Bluetooth 24
 - Using USB Connection 25
- Transfer Files 267
- Trim Ringtone 198
- TTY Mode 265
- Turn Device Off 11
- Turn Device On 11
- Turn On and Off 10
- Twitter 192
- Two-finger Swipe 15
- Type Text 39

U

- Update Phone
 - Back Up Data 51
 - Prepare 50
 - Update Operating System 51
 - Update PRL 52
 - Update Your Profile 52
- Update Your Phone 50
- USB Tethering 224

V

- vCalendar 189
- Video 149
- Video Call 90
 - Face Tracking 90
 - Share Screen 91
- Video Chat 90
- Video Resolution 149
- VideoPic 149
- Videos
 - View 158
- Virtual Private Networks (VPN) 222
- Visual Search 163
- Visual Voicemail 93
 - Options 95

- Review 94
- Set Up 93
- Settings 95
- Voice Memos 215
- Voice Recorder 215
- Voice Typing 43
- Voicemail 92
 - Display name 96
 - Greeting 96
 - International 237
 - Notification 92
 - Password 281
 - Retrieve Messages 93
 - Setup 92
- Volume
 - Key 4

W

- Wallpaper 62
- Weather 192
- Wi-Fi 220
 - Disconnect 221
 - Turn On or Off 220
 - WPS 221
- Wi-Fi Calling 99
 - Enable 99
 - Make a Call 100
 - Set Up 99
 - Turn Off 100
- Wi-Fi Direct 221
- Widget panels 54
- Wireless Router 223
- World Clock 191

Y

- YouTube 194
 - Search Videos 194
 - Watch Videos 194

Z

- Zoe 166
- Zoodles 204
- Zoom 15
- Zooming 146